

NOLO

"Anyone who wants to make the most effective use of customers for word-of-mouth marketing needs to read what Rasberry and Phillips have to say."

TIM O'REILLY, CEO OF O'REILLY & ASSOCIATES

6TH EDITION

Marketing *Without* Advertising

Easy Ways to Build a Business Your
Customers Will Love & Recommend

- Provide great service
- Generate "word of mouth" marketing
- Attract new customers

by Michael Phillips & Salli Rasberry



6th edition

Marketing Without Advertising

by Michael Phillips & Salli Rasberry



Sixth Edition	MAY 2008
Editor	CATHERINE CAPUTO
Cover Design	SUSAN PUTNEY
Production	SARAH HINMAN
Proofreading	ROBERT WELLS
Index	BAYSIDE INDEXING SERVICE
Printing	CONSOLIDATED PRINTERS, INC.

Phillips, Michael, 1938-

Marketing without advertising / by Michael Phillips & Salli Rasberry ; edited by Catherine Caputo. -- 6th ed.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN-13: 978-1-4133-0632-3 (pbk.)

ISBN-10: 1-4133-0632-2 (pbk.)

1. Marketing 2. Small business--Management. I. Rasberry, Salli. II. Caputo, Catherine. III. Title.

HF5415.P484 2008

658.8--dc22

2007051620

Copyright © 1986, 1997, 2001, 2003, 2005, and 2008 by Michael Phillips and Salli Rasberry.
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without prior written permission. Reproduction prohibitions do not apply to the forms contained in this product when reproduced for personal use.

For information on bulk purchases or corporate premium sales, please contact the Special Sales Department. For academic sales or textbook adoptions, ask for Academic Sales. Call 800-955-4775 or write to Nolo at 950 Parker Street, Berkeley, CA 94710.

Acknowledgments

With special thanks to Soni Richardson and Michael Eschenbach.

Full Disclosure Note

All the businesses and business owners mentioned in the book are real. The great majority operate under their own names in the cities indicated. However, because some of our examples are less than flattering, and for other reasons, including privacy, we have changed the names and locations of businesses in a few cases.

In some cases, the businesses used as examples in the book do advertise—their marketing ideas are so good we included them anyway. In most cases, if a business used as an example does advertise, it is a small part of their marketing mix.

Table of Contents

	Your Marketing Companion.....	1
1	Advertising: The Last Choice in Marketing.....	3
	The Myth of Advertising’s Effectiveness.....	5
	Why Customers Lured by Ads Are Often Not Loyal.....	13
	Why Dependence on Advertising Is Harmful.....	14
	Advertisers: Poor Company to Keep.....	16
	Honest Ads.....	21
	Branding.....	23
	Listings: “Advertising” That Works.....	24
2	Personal Recommendations:	
	The First Choice in Marketing.....	31
	Cost-Effectiveness.....	33
	Overcoming Established Buying Habits.....	38
	Basing Your Marketing Plan on Personal Recommendations.....	39
	When Not to Rely on Word of Mouth for Marketing.....	42
3	The Physical Appearance of Your Business	47
	Conform to Industry Norms	49
	Your Business’s Appearance	52
	Fantasy: A Growing Part of Retail Marketing.....	60
	The Test of Time.....	64
4	Pricing.....	67
	Easy-to-Understand Prices	68
	Complete Prices	70

Giving Customers Choice About Price.....	74
Internet Pricing.....	77

5	How You Treat the People Around You	81
	Tracking Reputations via the Grapevine.....	82
	How Employees Spread the Word	84
	Common Employee Complaints	88
	Handling Employee Complaints	91
	Finding Out What Employees Are Thinking.....	93
	Suppliers.....	97
	Business Friends and Acquaintances	102
	Individuals Who Spread Negative Word of Mouth	
	About Your Business.....	106
	Your Behavior in Public	108

6	Openness: The Basis of Trust.....	111
	Financial Openness.....	113
	Physical Openness.....	117
	Openness in Management	119
	Openness With Information	120
	Openness With Ideas	123

7	Deciding How to Educate Potential Customers	127
	What Does Your Business Do?	128
	Defining the Domains in Which Your Business Operates.....	136
	Providing Information on Businesses in Established Fields.....	139
	Businesses in New or Obscure Fields.....	143
	Whom to Educate.....	152

8	How to Let Customers Know Your Business Is Excellent	163
	Tell Them Yourself.....	165
	Help Customers Judge for Themselves	171
	Giving Customers Authority for Your Claims.....	184
9	Helping Customers Find You.....	189
	Finding Your Business.....	191
	Convenience of Access	194
	Signs.....	198
	Telephone Accessibility.....	198
	Listing Your Services Creatively and Widely	207
	Getting Referrals From People in Related Fields.....	210
	Trade Shows and Conferences.....	213
10	Customer Recourse.....	219
	Elements of a Good Recourse Policy	221
	Designing a Good Recourse Policy	224
	Telling Customers About Your Recourse Policy	228
	Putting Your Recourse Policy in Writing	231
11	Marketing on the Internet.....	235
	Business Uses of the Internet: Demystified	237
	The Geographic Reach of the Internet	240
	What to Put on Your Site	243
	Designing an Internet Site	249
	Interactivity and Customer Screening	254
	How to Help People Find You Online.....	257
	International Marketing.....	263

12	Dynamic Interactive Marketing.....	271
	Beginning Architecture	272
	Attracting Customers.....	273
	The Look and Feel of Your Site.....	274
	Pricing	276
	eBay and Supplemental Outlet Sites	280
	Customer Education	280
	Customer Comments.....	282
	Security	282
	Podcasting.....	286
	Video Clips	286
13	Designing and Implementing Your Marketing Plan	289
	Your Marketing List: The “Who” of Your Marketing Plan	290
	How to Evaluate Your List.....	292
	Marketing Actions and Events: The “What” of Your Marketing Plan.....	294
	Direct Marketing Actions	297
	Parallel Marketing Actions	310
	Peer-Based Marketing Actions.....	317
14	Creating a Calendar of Events	325
	Marketing Calendar for an Interior Design Firm.....	327
	Marketing Calendar for Jerry and Jess’s New Chiropractic Clinic	329
	Marketing Calendar for Lolly & Criggles—an eBay Children’s Boutique Clothing Website.....	336
A	Appendix.....	341
I	Index.....	389

Your Marketing Companion

Take a look around your community and make a list of truly superior small businesses—ones you trust so thoroughly you would recommend them to your friends, your boss, and even your in-laws. Whether your mind turns to restaurants, plumbers, plant nurseries, or veterinarians, chances are good your list is fairly short.

Now think about all the ads for local businesses that fill your newspaper, clutter your doorstep, spew out of your radio, cover the back of your grocery receipts, or reach you in dozens of other ways. How many of these businesses are on your list? More than likely, not many. In fact, I'll bet the most heavily advertised local businesses are among the businesses you never plan to patronize—or patronize again—no matter how many 50%-off specials you are offered.

If, like me, you have learned the hard way that many businesses that loudly trumpet their virtues are barely average, how do you find a top-quality business when you need something? Almost surely, whether you need a roof for your house, an accountant for your business, a math tutor for your child, or a restaurant for a Saturday night out, you ask for a recommendation from someone you consider knowledgeable and trustworthy.

Once you grasp the simple fact that what counts is not what a business says about itself, but rather what others say about it, you should quickly understand and embrace the message of this brilliant book. Simply put: The best way to succeed in business is to run such a wonderful operation that your loyal and satisfied customers will brag about your goods and services far and wide. Instead of spending a small fortune on advertising, it's far better to spend the same money improving your business and caring for customers.

It's the honest power of this honest message that made me excited to publish *Marketing Without Advertising* back in 1986. Uniquely among small business writers, Phillips and Rasberry were saying the same things I had learned as a co-founder of [Nolo](#)—that the key to operating a profitable business is to respect what you do and how you do it. This means not only producing top-quality services and products, but also demonstrating your respect for your coworkers and customers.

After many years of success, it's a double pleasure for Nolo to publish another updated version of *Marketing Without Advertising*. Yes, lots of things about small business marketing have changed in the interim. Today many of us routinely use email to keep close to our customers. And, of course, the Internet has become an essential marketing tool for many businesses. But some things haven't changed. A trustworthy, well-run business is a pleasure to market, and the personal recommendations of satisfied customers are still the best foundation of a successful and personally rewarding business.

Marketing Without Advertising has been updated to provide a new generation of entrepreneurs with the essential philosophical underpinnings for the development of a successful, low-cost marketing plan not based on advertising. But this isn't just a book about business philosophy. It is full of specific suggestions about how to put together a highly effective marketing plan, including guidance concerning business appearance, pricing, employee and supplier relations, accessibility, open business practices, customer recourse, and many other topics.

Consumers are increasingly savvy, and information about a business's quality or lack thereof circulates faster than ever before. The only approach worth taking is to put your planning, hard work, and money into creating a wonderful business, and to let your customers do your advertising for you.

Ralph Warner, Publisher
Berkeley, California



Advertising: The Last Choice in Marketing

The Myth of Advertising's Effectiveness.....	5
Why Customers Lured by Ads Are Often Not Loyal.....	13
Why Dependence on Advertising Is Harmful	14
Advertisers: Poor Company to Keep.....	16
Honest Ads.....	21
Branding.....	23
Listings: "Advertising" That Works	24

Marketing means running a first-rate business and letting people know about it. Every action your company takes sends a marketing message. Building a business image is not something invented by a P.R. firm; it's a reflection of what you do and how you do it.

A clever ad is what pops into most people's minds when they think about getting the word out about their business. The fact is, most of us know little about advertising and a whole lot about marketing. We are really *the* marketing experts for our business because we know it better than anyone else.

It may surprise you to know how many established small businesses have discovered that they do not need to advertise to prosper. A large majority—more than two-thirds in the U.S., certainly—of profitable small businesses operate successfully without advertising.

“Really high spending on advertising sales is an admission of failure. I’d much prefer to see investments in loyalty leading to better repeat purchases than millions spent for a Super Bowl ad.”

—WARD HANSON, AUTHOR OF *PRINCIPLES OF INTERNET MARKETING*. FROM “INTERNET MARKETING AND E-COMMERCE,” 2006



TIP

In this book we make a distinction between “advertising,” which is broadcasting your message to many uninterested members of the public, and “listing,” which is directing your message to specific people interested in the product or service, such as in the yellow pages.

Here’s where the figure about small business and advertising comes from: There are about 20 million nonfarm businesses in the United States. Of these, about two million are involved in construction; another five million deal in wholesaling, manufacturing, trucking, or mining. A small minority (30% of the total) generate customers by advertising. The

rest rely on personally knowing their customers, on their reputations, and sometimes on salespeople or commissioned representatives. Of the remaining 13 million businesses, 70% are run by one person. It's very rare for the self-employed to find advertising useful; the single-person business, whether that of a lawyer, doctor, or computer consultant, relies almost exclusively on personal recommendations. That leaves the percentage of businesses who might even consider advertising useful at less than 19%. We think most of them don't need it, either.

There are four main reasons why advertising is inappropriate for most businesses:

- Advertising is simply not cost-effective. Claims that it produces even marginal financial returns are usually fallacious.
- Customers lured by ads tend to be disloyal. In other words, advertising does not provide a solid customer base for future business.
- Dependence on advertising makes a business more vulnerable to changes in volatile consumer taste and thus more likely to fail.
- Because a significant percentage of advertising is deceptive, advertisers are often seen by the public (both consciously and unconsciously) as dishonest and manipulative. Businesses that advertise heavily are often suspected of offering poor quality goods and services.

Let's now look at these reasons in more detail.

The Myth of Advertising's Effectiveness

The argument made by the proponents of advertising is almost pathetically simple-minded: If you can measure the benefits of advertising on your business, advertising works; if you can't measure the beneficial effects, then your measurements aren't good enough. Or you need more ads. Or you need a different type of ad. It's much the

same type of rationalization put forth by the proponents of making yourself rich by visualizing yourself as being prosperous. If you get rich immediately, you owe it all to the system (and presumably should give your visualization guru at least a 10% commission). If you're still poor after six months, something is wrong with your picture. It reminds us of the man in Chicago who had marble statues of lions in front of his house to keep away elephants: "It works," he said. "Ain't no elephants in this neighborhood."

James B. Twitchell, the author of *Adcult*, notes, "Although elaborate proofs of advertising's impotence are available, the simple fact is that you cannot put a meter on the relationship between increased advertising and increased sales. If you could, agencies would charge clients by how much they have increased sales, not by how much media space they have purchased."

Paradoxically, even though some small business owners are beginning to realize that advertising doesn't work, many still advertise. Why? For a number of reasons: because they have been conditioned to believe that advertising works, because there are no other models to follow, and because bankers expect to see "advertising costs" as part of a business proposal.

It's important to realize that your judgment regarding advertising is likely to be severely skewed. You have been surrounded by ads all your life, and you've heard countless times that advertising works. To look at advertising objectively may require you to reexamine some deeply held beliefs.

Advertising budgets have doubled every decade since 1976 and grown by 50% in the last ten years. "Companies now spend about \$162 billion each year to bombard us with print and broadcast ads; that works out to about \$623 for every man, woman and child in the United States" (Laurie Ann Mazur, *Marketing Madness*, E: The Environmental Magazine, May-June, 1996). Information Resources, a global marketing resource firm (www.infores.com), studied the effect of advertising and

concluded, “There is no simple correspondence between advertising and higher sales The relationship between high copy scores and increased sales is tenuous at best.”

To illustrate how pervasive the “advertising works” belief system is, consider that if the sales of a particular product fall off dramatically, most people look for all sorts of explanations without ever considering that the fall-off may be a result of counterproductive advertising.

Skeptics may claim that you simply can’t sell certain consumer products—beer, for example—without an endless array of mindless TV ads. We refer these skeptics to the Anchor Steam Brewing Company of San Francisco, which very profitably sold 103,000 barrels of excellent beer in 1995 without any ad campaign. They believe in slow and steady growth and maintain a loyal and satisfied client base. (See Chapter 13 for details on how.)

In 2006, the fabulously successful discount warehouse, Costco, continued to outperform Wal-Mart and Sam’s Club thanks largely to their cost-cutting business approach—which includes absolutely no advertising.

Even apparent successes may not be what they seem. The California Raisin Advisory Board ran an ad campaign that produced the most recognized ad in the history of advertising. In the mid-1980s, its advertising agency, Foote Cone and Belding, used the first popular national clay animation campaign. (Claymation is a trademark of Will Vinton studios.) The annual budget was over \$40 million. The dancing raisins and their song “I Heard It Through the Grapevine” created such a popular image that sales from dolls, other toys, mugs, and secondary products generated nearly \$200 million in revenue and resulted in a Saturday children’s television program using the raisin characters. Raisin sales went up for the first two years of the campaign, largely because cold breakfast cereal marketers were so impressed with the popularity of the ad campaign that they increased the raisin content of their raisin cereals and joined in the advertising.

After four years, the dancing raisin campaign was discontinued. Sales were lower than before the ads started (*Forbes*, June 17, 1996). By the early 1990s, the California Raisin Advisory Board had been abolished.

The Internet and World Wide Web have introduced a new test of advertising effectiveness. Billions of dollars had been spent on advertising before the advent of the Web, yet no major offline advertiser was able to create an online presence of any significance. Even Toys “R” Us, the major American toy retailer, ranked far behind eToys in brand awareness online, despite the fact that Toys “R” Us is a 25-year-old company and eToys lasted barely two years. For Toys “R” Us, decades of advertising simply had no staying power (*The Industry Standard*, March 20, 2000). One of the biggest successes on the Internet, eBay, used no advertising at all.

The hugely successful Craigslist is a community-based operation headquartered in San Francisco. Eminently useful, the on-line bulletin board accepts classified ads for just about anything, from jobs to apartments, football tickets to electronics. What is noteworthy about Craigslist is that it lets users post the vast majority of these classifieds for free—only job ads posted in three United States cities require a fee. It also has an unadorned, simple website and does no advertising.

Craig Newmark started his list ten years ago as a way to keep friends aware of events in the Bay Area. Craigslist now has websites in 65 cities in the United States, and prompted by users’ feedback, also has sites in Toronto, Paris, Belgium, Tokyo, and Sydney, with more planned in the near future.

One magazine with a significant audience on the Internet is *Consumer Reports*, a magazine that carries no advertising. By eliminating advertising from its business model, *Consumer Reports* is able to maintain a high degree of integrity and cultivate trust among its readers, who value the magazine’s objective information.

“Unlike many others who dispense online advice, *Consumer Reports* does not accept advertisements, does not earn a referral fee for directing

customers to specific merchants, and does not repackage and sell its data as market research to the companies whose products are reviewed” (*The New York Times*, March 22, 2000).

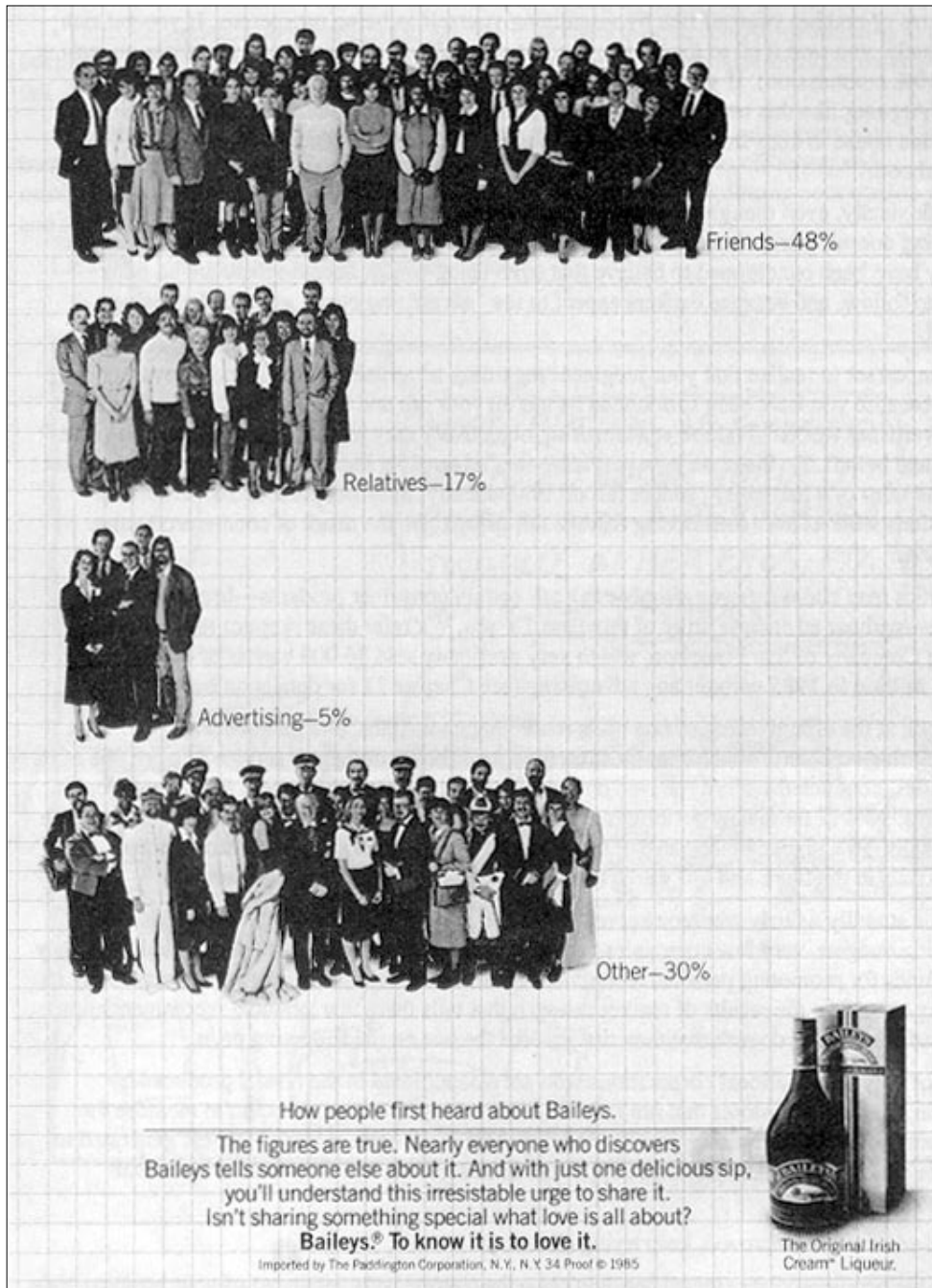
Consumer Reports also maintains a list of companies that pledge to keep their websites honest. This is their statement about the 300 companies that are highly rated: “*The companies and Web sites listed ... have taken a pledge to abide by our guidelines to improve online credibility. They know that unless their sites are trustworthy, you won’t come back. So we will continue our efforts to expand this list, to make the Web a safer place for consumers everywhere.*”

One giant aircraft manufacturing company, to look at the effectiveness of heavily advertising an in-house computer service through one of its subsidiaries, conducted a survey to find out how its 100 newest customers had found out about it. The results: 13% of these new customers came because of the advertising campaign, 23% because of sales calls, 56% signed up because of recommendations from other satisfied customers and professionals in the field, and 8% weren’t sure why they had chosen that computer service.

This is actually a fairly common survey result. Yet, as we can see from their bloated advertising budgets, very few companies act on the information. If they did, they would obviously budget funds for promoting personal recommendations. Indeed, some businesses are apparently so unwilling to believe what market research tells them—that personal recommendations work and advertising doesn’t—that they spend money on ads like the one on the following page.

Google is one of the most successful companies in history. Started by two students on credit card borrowings, and bootstrapping the business at every point along the way, the company became profitable in its third year. It was worth \$50 billion in a little over five years, with fewer than 2,000 employees.

Google has kept its opening search page refreshingly stark, white, and blatantly free of ads. It also doesn’t accept advertising (like banners on



Yahoo). It only sells *listings*, and the listings are kept separate from the search results and have no influence on them. This policy is virtually unheard of in magazines, TV, and newspapers.

It's not only large national corporations that are disappointed in the results of advertising. Local retail stores that run redeemable discount coupons to measure the effectiveness of their advertising usually find that the business generated isn't even enough to offset the cost of the ad.

Despite this, supporters of advertising continue to convince small business owners that:

- The ad could be improved; keep trying (forever).
- All the people who saw the ad but didn't clip the coupon were reminded of your business and may use it in the future. Keep advertising (forever).
- The effects of advertising are cumulative. Definitely keep advertising (forever).

But what about the favorable long-term effects of continuous advertising? Isn't there something to the notion of continually reminding the public you exist? Dr. Julian L. Simon, of the University of Illinois, says no: "[attributing] threshold effects and increasing returns to repetition of ads constitutes a monstrous myth, I believe, but a myth so well-entrenched that it is almost impossible to shake."

Using advertising to make your business a household word can often backfire; a business with a well-advertised name is extremely vulnerable to bad publicity.

Take the Coors brewery as an example. Thirty years ago, after it had vastly expanded its original territory and become a household word throughout much of the country with heavy advertising (\$100 million per year in the 1980s), the Teamsters' Union waged a very effective consumer boycott against it. In Seattle, a strong union town, less than 5% of the market in the 1990s was drinking Coors. The Coors of the

1960s, known primarily to its loyal customers in the Rocky Mountain states, where it had a third of the beer-drinking market, was far less vulnerable to such a boycott.

Or how about the stockbroker E.F. Hutton, which spent many millions creating a false advertising image: “When E.F. Hutton talks, people listen.” The image backfired spectacularly when Hutton was caught engaging in large-scale illegal currency transactions. The many jokes about who really listens when E.F. Hutton talks contributed to the dramatic decline of the firm, which was ultimately taken over by another broker at fire sale prices. Similarly, the huge but little-known agricultural processing company Archer Daniels Midland, headquartered in rural Illinois, made itself a household name by underwriting public television programs. The public was well acquainted with “ADM, Supermarket to the World,” by the time it became embroiled in a price-fixing scandal and had to pay \$100 million in fines.

Becoming a brand name has its disadvantages. Martha Stewart, the self-promoted diva of gracious living, saw herself ridiculed, and her business empire plunge in value, after she was accused of improper stock trading.

The price of Omnimedia stock (the company that owns the Martha Stewart brand) fell from \$20 per share to \$5 per share after the criminal charges against her were made public, losing shareholders three-quarters of a billion dollars. It took more than three years and Martha’s release from prison before the stock returned to its earlier levels.

The moral of these little stories is simple: If these companies had



relied less on advertising, their problems would have been much less of a public spectacle.

Sadly, many small businesses make sacrifices to pay for expensive ads, never being certain they are effective. Sometimes this means the quality of the business's product or service is cut. Other times, business owners or employees sacrifice their own needs to pay for advertising. We think it's far better to use the money to sponsor a neighborhood picnic or take the family on a short vacation or to put the money into a useful capital improvement to the business. As John Wanamaker, turn-of-the-century merchant and philanthropist, put it, "Half the money I spend on advertising is wasted, and the trouble is, I don't know which half."

Why Customers Lured by Ads Are Often Not Loyal

Perhaps the worst aspect of traditional advertising, one apparent to anyone who runs a retail store, is that customers who respond primarily to media ads don't usually return. The same truth has been discovered by magazines and publishing companies that rely heavily on junk mail solicitations to sell their wares. The fact is that customers recruited through scattergun advertising techniques such as TV spots, newspaper ads, direct mail, contests, unsolicited telephone sales, and Internet freebies rarely come back. Unscrupulous Internet businesses such as DoubleClick have used the Internet to invade your privacy and sell your email address to other businesses who beseege you with so-called "targeted" marketing based on sites you have visited and purchases you have made.

An example of this phenomenon familiar to most owners of small service-type businesses comes from the experience of Laura Peck. She wrote to us that she used to advertise her assertiveness workshops, but due to financial problems discontinued the ads. Instead, she started cultivating her own community of friends and acquaintances for clients. Two years later, her business was thriving, and she noted:

“When I advertised, I seemed to attract people who came because of the discount I offered. These clients often did not return, would cancel sessions, and generally were not repeaters. The people who were most enthusiastic, most loyal, and continued with their sessions were almost always clients who had been personally referred. Had it not been for the economics involved, I would probably not have learned this important lesson: Personal recommendation is the best advertising there is.”

Why Dependence on Advertising Is Harmful

To an extent, advertising is an addiction: Once you're hooked, it's very difficult to stop. You become accustomed to putting a fixed advertising cost into your budget, and you are afraid to stop because of a baseless fear that, if you do, your flow of new customers will dry up and your previous investments in advertising will have been wasted.

While of course there are rare occasions when a particular ad can produce lots of business, it's as rare in the small business world as catching a 30-pound lake trout off a recreational fishing boat or winning a \$100,000 jackpot at a gambling casino. The story of the great advertising success (the “pet rock” fad of years ago is an extreme example) becomes widely known in the particular community and is picked up by trade journals and sometimes even the general media. As a result, many inexperienced businesspeople are coaxed into spending money on ads. Overlooked in all the hoopla is the rarity of this sort of success; also overlooked is what often happens to the person whose ad produced the quick profits. Flash-in-the-pan advertising success may bring an initial influx of customers that your business isn't prepared for. This usually has two unfortunate consequences: Many loyal long-term customers are turned off when service declines as the expanding business stretches itself too thin, and most of the new customers will not be repeaters.

Mary Palmer, a photographer in San Jose, California, started her business with a simplistic but traditional marketing strategy—advertising on her local newspaper’s “weddings” page. Palmer was one of the first photographers in her area to insert an ad for wedding photos. She very happily took in \$12,000 during the prime April-to-August wedding season. The next year she advertised again, but this time her ad was one of many. Not only did the ad fail to generate much business, she got few referrals from the many customers she had worked for the previous year. Concerned, Palmer called us for emergency business advice.

Visiting her, we found her business to be badly organized and generally chaotic. The overall impression it gave was poor. It was easy to see why so few of Palmer’s customers referred their friends, or themselves patronized her business for other occasions. Palmer was a victim of her own flash-in-the-pan advertising success. Believing that “advertising works” had lulled her into the false belief that she didn’t really have to learn how to run a high-quality business. There wasn’t much we could really tell her except to start over, using the solid business techniques and personal recommendation approaches discussed in this book.

Palmer’s business is in direct contrast to Gail Woodridge’s, who also specializes in wedding photography. Woodridge doesn’t do any advertising in the conventional sense, although she does list her services widely in places likely to produce referrals, as discussed later in this chapter and in Chapter 9. Her clients are primarily referred to her by wedding planners, bridal gown and flower stores, friends, and former clients—people who know her and trust her to do a good job. Using this approach, her business has grown fairly slowly, so she has had the time, and the good sense, to make sure that the many details of her business are in order—including her office work and finances, as well as her camera equipment, darkroom supplies, and filing system.

Advertisers: Poor Company to Keep

According to a recent consumer expenditure survey, households spend \$4 trillion per year. It's estimated that \$236 billion will be spent this year in the United States on print, radio, online, and broadcast advertising to get a piece of this market. The result is sensory bombardment. It is also estimated that each American is exposed to well over 5,000 advertising messages per day, and that children see over 50,000 TV commercials a year. In our view, as many as one-quarter of all these ads are deliberately deceptive. Increasingly, the family of businesses that advertise is not one you should be proud to be associated with.

Do you doubt our claim that a significant portion of advertising is dishonest? Do a little test for yourself. Look through your local newspaper as we did one recent morning. Here are a few of the ads we found:

- An ad for a weight reduction center that promises its clients will lose five, ten, or 20 pounds a week. True, some people just might shed some of those unwanted pounds, but how many will keep them off for more than three months? According to Joan Price, in her book *The Honest Truth About Losing Weight and Keeping It Off*, 90% of dieters regain their lost weight within one year. She explains, "Sorry, folks, there's no miracle way to block, burn, rub, jiggle, vacuum, melt, or wrap fat off our bodies. There's no magic pill, injection, cream, or potion. If there were, don't you think it would make the front page of all the newspapers and medical journals instead of being buried in an ad?" Nowhere in the ad is there a mention of permanent weight loss, because, of course, whatever the method it won't work over the long term. If the ad told the truth, no one would use the service.
- An ad that duped our friends, who bought their son a highly advertised remote control car for Christmas. It had just hit the market, and our friends joined the long line at the checkout stand

picturing the delight on their child's face Christmas morning. It was not clear to our friends from the ads that the car needed a special rechargeable battery unit, and when they returned to the store a week before the big day they were informed that the batteries were sold out and wouldn't be available until after Christmas. They went back week after week until finally, two months after Christmas, the batteries arrived. To add insult to injury, the charger unit for the \$50 car cost an extra \$20.

- An ad that offers home security at a bargain price in big letters sounds like just the ticket to protect your family, until you read the fine print. In very tiny letters, the ad explains that the \$99 price covers only the standard installation and that an additional 36-month monitoring agreement is also required. In addition, a telephone connection fee may also be required.

America's Largest Airline?

In a 2006 *Wall Street Journal* article, Scott McCartney reported: "Earlier this summer, Delta began claiming that 'it is proud to be America's largest airline.' The Atlanta carrier said in a June 8 news release that it has 'more departures to more cities in the United States than any other carrier.'"

But, according to McCartney, the number of flights and the number of destinations have never been the accepted criteria for ranking airline size. It would be a bit like ranking retailers by the number of stores rather than sales, or scoring baseball games by the number of hits instead of runs. The standard measure of airline size has long been passenger traffic, measured in revenue-passenger miles. Delta is a distant third in passenger miles and revenue.

Whether you look in a newspaper, a magazine, or the electronic media, it is not difficult to find many less-than-honest ads. Even if you advertise in a scrupulously honest way, your ads keep bad company.

The public, which has long since become cynical about the general level of honesty in advertising, will not take what you say at face value. For example, suppose you own a restaurant, and instead of extolling the wonders of your menu in exaggerated prose you simply state that you serve “excellent food at a reasonable price.” Many people, cynical after a lifetime of being duped by puffed-up claims, are likely to conclude that your food couldn’t be too good if that’s all you can say about it.

But some warn against combating the cynicism with trickery. For example, in a *Time* magazine article titled “It’s an Ad Ad Ad World” (July 23, 2002), Keith Reinhard, chairman of marketing services agency DDB Worldwide, stated, “I’m against any form of deception. In the end, it’s bad business.”

One type of dishonest advertising is a bit more subtle and involves magazines and newspapers that you might have respected before you discovered their policy. It works like this: The publication touts the products and services of its advertisers in its news stories. For example, some computer magazines have been known to favorably review the products of their heavy advertisers, and small newspapers often fawn over the products and services of businesses that can be counted on to buy space. Once you discover this sort of policy, everything the publication reviews, even businesses that are truly excellent, is thrown into question.

Devious advertising is rampant in our culture; from “enhanced underwriting” of public broadcast shows, featuring announcements that look identical to commercial television ads, to paid product placement (inserting brand-name goods into movies, video games, and TV).

Stealth or covert marketing occurs when potential customers do not realize they are being marketed to. For example, when celebrities appear on talk shows praising prescription drugs without mentioning that a pharmaceutical company is paying them. No longer satisfied with product placement, companies now pay authors to include brand names in the text of their books. And it gets worse as the line between life and

advertising blurs. Trendsetters are paid to drive cars to important parties. Attractive people are hired to frequent bars and talk up certain brands. Moms are paid to praise products at soccer games, and teens are hired to give their peers T-shirts, posters, and CD samplers hyping bands. A Tampa, Florida, high school classroom was recently transformed into a model Outback Restaurant, complete with wood flooring, their signature purple ceiling, and decor from Down Under. This trend is also seen in student-run bank branches within select high schools.

Indeed, we have come a long way from the dairy industry giving free milk to children at recess. School districts across the country now sell exclusive ad space to the highest bidder on school buses, hallways, vending machines, and athletic uniforms. Channel One, which gives participating schools video equipment in exchange for piping ads into the classroom, is the tip of the iceberg. Corporations have begun writing the very lesson plans themselves.

Thirty years ago, a study done for the Harvard Business School made clear how the American public felt about traditional advertising: “43% of Americans think that most advertising insults the intelligence of the average consumer. And 53% of Americans disagree that most advertisements present a true picture of the product advertised.” The chief reasons for hostility to advertising are that it is intrusive and patronizing (73%), morally objectionable (50%), and false and misleading (36%). That the judgment of the general public about honesty in advertising has not improved is demonstrated by a 2004 Gallup study asking: Which professionals does the public trust the most, and the least. Advertising professionals were second to last, and used car salespeople came in last.

If you want to know who is really behind an ad campaign that appears to be advocating better public policy or medical care, refer to Annenberg Public Policy Center’s website at: www.appcpenn.org.

Let’s take a minute to look at the advertising slogans of some of America’s most prominent corporations. Though the advertising business considers the following slogans “good” advertising and not dishonest hype, ask yourself, is this good company for your business to keep?

- State Farm. Like a Good Neighbor, State Farm Is There.
- BMW. The Ultimate Driving Machine
- Chevy. Built Like a Rock
- Visa. It's Everywhere You Want to Be.
- American Express. Don't Leave Home Without It.
- Mentos. The Freshmaker
- Taco Bell. Think Outside the Bun
- Got Milk?
- Just do it (Nike).

We've all heard these slogans or ones like them for many years. They're so familiar that we have to concentrate to even hear them and really pay attention to understand if they are hype or simply not true. And more of them bombard us every day. You can undoubtedly think of many more with no trouble at all.

People are apparently so sick of traditional advertising hype that occasionally even counter-advertising is successful. Bernie Hannaford, who runs a diner named "The Worst Food in Oregon," was quoted in *USA Today* as saying, "I'm a lousy cook, and my father always told me to tell the truth, no matter what." Signs outside invite diners to "Come in and sit with the flies!" and warn, "Food is terrible—service is worse."

Read the Fine Print

Check out mouseprint.org to see examples of some of the most outrageous "fine print" caveats. The name of this website refers to the common marketing term used for print so small that only a mouse could read it. Our current favorite is the online broker who advertises "online trades for as low as \$9.95." But when you read the fine print you discover this offer applies only to "customers with a balance of \$1 million or more."

Honest Ads

Lest you become completely discouraged about the possibility of a better standard of honesty in advertising, there is hope. At least two nations, Japan and Sweden, encourage honesty in their advertising. In neither country do ads have “fine print” that contradicts the main message, nor do they permit the sorts of puffery and hype we are used to and which all too often amount to little more than lying.

Japan’s tradition of honest advertising is a long one. In the first century A.D., Chinese visitors were so impressed with the honesty of Japanese businesses that they recorded it as a main attribute of their culture. This 2,000-year-old history of honesty is today reflected in many details: Restaurants display samples of their food in the window and quote prices in round numbers, including sales tax and tip. If you see an 800-yen price advertised for an item, it is the total price you pay. [Nolo’s](#) Stephanie Harolde, who lived and worked in Japan, adds that Japanese businesses never put down their competitors or used comparisons that intimated their product was better than the competitors’.

In Sweden, whose culture is closer to our own, there has been a more deliberate political decision to foster truthful advertising. In that country, it has been against the law since the early 1970s to be deceptive in advertising. To accomplish this, the government not only extended its criminal code to proscribe deceptive advertising, but also formed an administrative agency to enforce the law. As a result, the Swedish people now strongly defend the integrity of their advertising. Perhaps someday we, too, will be proud of ours.

Deceptive advertising is technically illegal in the United States, but enforcement is minimal. The legal standards for advertising are discussed in [*Legal Guide for Starting & Running a Small Business*](#), by Fred Steingold (Nolo).

We mention the Japanese and Swedish use of advertising to urge that, should you ever decide to advertise, your advertisements should



STICK • O • RAMA!

Are you tired of ads in your face? Well put some in theirs! This page of graphics is for you to look at with wonder, but under no circumstances should you ever...

- Take this page to a copy shop
- Ask that it be photocopied onto commercial self-adhesive paper, like Mactac
- Clip, peel, and adhere to appropriate surfaces

PERFUME POLLUTES		OVERCONSUMPTION
SAVE! TEAR DOWN THIS AD AND BRING IT IN For 50% OFF!! LIMIT 3 PER CUSTOMER	TUNE OUT CHANNEL 1	AIN'T PRETTY!
BLACK OR WHITE?	TUNE OUT KNN YOUR JUNK MAIL IS BOTH AN INVASION OF MY PRIVACY AND HARMFUL TO THE ENVIRONMENT RETURN TO SENDER	imagine life without this.

HEY! If you don't like these ideas, then come up with your own! Whaddya think, we're gonna do ALL the work?

BIG NOISE is a supplement of **ADBUSTERS** Magazine published by the Media Foundation 1243 West 7th Ave. Vancouver, B.C. V6H 1B7 Tel. (604) 736-9401

be scrupulously honest and as distinct as possible in style, content, and location from the general run of other ads. For example, if you limit an offering in a print ad in any way, do so in print as large as the offer itself. If you advertise a service, don't overstate the likely beneficial result of using it, and include a warning as to any risk.

Branding

“Branding” has been a catch phrase in advertising for the past decade, and brand managers can now be found in the marketing departments of large companies. Branding is an ingenious response to the fact that traditional advertising doesn't work. The idea is to make a product or service so well known that its consumer recognition magically places it in the category of widely recognized and respected brands. The concept of branding is that a minor brand, Electronic Product X, can become as well known as a major brand such as Sony Electronics if Electronic Product X simply spends enough in advertising to “establish” its brand name.

The problem with this concept is that true brand identity is created when a company produces quality products or services and stands by them with solid warranties, product recalls, and other methods to ensure customer satisfaction. Running a business this way—not spending a fortune on advertising—is what creates trust and goodwill. In recent decades, several brand names were devastated when they did a lousy job of handling problems with their products. Perrier, Gerber baby products, Sears Auto Centers, and Firestone each mismanaged product recalls and took years to recover. Gerber was ultimately sold to new management, and Sears even damaged the reputation of its nonauto business. On the other hand, Tylenol handled a recall beautifully and made its brand even stronger.

For a branding strategy to be effective, a company must be vigilant about its product and service quality—and be prepared for emergencies.

Without addressing these issues, a company's reputation is a sitting target, waiting to be ruined. No amount of advertising will be able to develop a good reputation for a company unless there's solid product integrity behind it.

In an article on branding in *The New Yorker* (June 10, 2002), James Surowiecki stated, "Where modern marketers have succeeded, wildly, is in selling us on the idea that marketing is all you need. The numbers suggest a different, homier lesson. The surest way to get stronger sales is to sell a stronger product."

Listings: "Advertising" That Works

"Hey, wait a minute," you may be saying. "Traditional media advertising may not be as worthwhile as it's cracked up to be, but many types of advertising do work for small businesses."

The types of "ads" that often work for small businesses include the telephone yellow pages, business directory listings, flyers posted in laundromats, good Internet Web pages, and "notification" type ads placed in all sorts of appropriate locations, from free "penny saver" newspapers to, in the case of a restaurant with late evening hours, the program of the local symphony.

We make a major distinction between these types of ads directed at interested prospects and traditional print, broadcast, and electronic advertising. In fact, we prefer to call these sorts of notices, whether paid for or not, "listings." One good rule to distinguish the two is that a listing is found where people are looking for it. A traditional ad, on the other hand, like a billboard in front of some lovely scenery or a deodorant commercial in the middle of an engrossing TV show, is usually intrusive and often annoying.

Another aspect of traditional advertising, but not of listings, is that advertising agencies get what amounts to a kickback for selling an

advertisement: They make most of their money from the discount the media offers only to them. For example, an ad agency might sell you an ad for \$100,000 and then buy media time for \$85,000. If you list your business in the yellow pages, even using a large ad, you and the ad agency are charged the same rate. Putting up a successful website can draw hundreds of thousands of viewers, even if you create it yourself. In other words, listings almost never have an ad agency discount policy.

To further illustrate the distinction between advertising and listing, consider the popularity of TiVo and other digital video recorders. TiVo lets the user skip the advertisements—a feature most users take advantage of. Advertising is an intrusion on nearly everyone's time, and most people don't like the intrusion no matter how cute, funny, or interesting the ad is. A listing, on the other hand, is always in a place that a prospective customer goes to for the purpose of finding information, like the yellow pages. A Google placement is the ultimate listing, because the prospective customer is looking for the specific word or words that define the information search.

Our friend, Alex Gault, wrote an article about the effectiveness of Google's AdWords program for marketing purposes:

"Throughout the twentieth century most ad campaigns depended upon the following practices: demographic analyses by marketers, media selection by media planners, ad placement by media buyers, and then analysis of results by agency executives. All told, a campaign and its assessment took many months.

"With the Google AdWords program, an analogous process can take mere days. A shoe marketer like Nike might select 3,000 keywords—"pronation," "distance running," "Michael Jordan," etc.—and write five messages for each keyword. It's thus not unheard of to have 15,000 messages for just one product. The messages for each keyword alternate, and the ones that result in the least hits are eliminated. Feedback can be almost instantaneous. "Overnight you can see which ads work best and shut some off," says Tim Armstrong, VP of ad sales at Google. "And

there's no penalty for trying every idea, because you only pay for what works." Unless they run out of a product, advertisers have no incentive ever to shut off a campaign."

To sign up for words on the Google AdWords site, go to: <https://adwords.google.com/select>.

We strongly encourage the use of listings. Indeed, for most businesses, listings are essential, particularly yellow pages ads for businesses that people use primarily in an emergency: a drain cleaning service, a plumber, or a locksmith, for example. Listings in the phone book yellow pages—and, where appropriate, the Silver Pages for seniors and ethnic yellow pages—are invaluable.

Also, if you have an online business, be sure to list it in directory sites. Online directories are like traditional yellow pages in that they are organized by subject—making it easy for anyone to find your construction, editing, or day care business. To check out the directory that already lists the competition—and to get ideas about how and where to list your own business—do a search using Google (www.google.com) or some other search engine under "Online yellow pages Directories."

In a few instances, the concepts of listing and advertising have all but merged. For example, in many areas of the country, Wednesday is traditionally the day grocery stores put items on sale. Thrifty shoppers therefore check the full-page lists (ads) of items for the best bargains. In our view, this sort of advertising qualifies as a listing as long as it is placed where consumers normally check.

Similarly, in the computer software business, a great deal of software is sold at discount prices by companies that regularly advertise their wares in computer magazines. The ads feature, in very small print, long lists of available software. Sophisticated customers know to check these listings first whenever they need software, because the prices offered are usually lower than in retail stores.

The Chamber of Commerce, employment and rental agencies, professional newsletters, magazines and journals, and special-interest books, such as those geared to the writer or photographer, are commonly accepted places to list goods or services. And in some instances, newspapers have developed such strong special-interest sections that it also makes sense to list one's services there. For example, a travel agency specializing in charter flights to Asia might place a list of prices in the Sunday travel section. Similarly, small community newspapers exist primarily thanks to local advertising, which usually consists of listings of goods and services. Many merchants find that this type of listing produces good results. Local schools and theater groups also depend on the support of the business community. We consider those kinds of ads as listings of the best sort.

In this vein, we have long been associated with the *Common Ground* directory, a very successful cooperative enterprise that publishes information in newspaper form about businesses involved in personal transformation. Interested people subscribe or pick up a copy at coffee shops, health spas, or wherever the businesses listing in *Common Ground* feel it is appropriate to leave a stack of papers. Because distribution is taken care of by the people who list in the directory, the paper has an uncanny ability to be located exactly where people who are interested in the listed services are likely to find it.

Nonprofits face the same challenge that for-profit businesses do: They need to tell as many people as possible about the service or product they provide. The Palo Alto, California, Information & Referral Service has come up with a clever way to disseminate a lot of information in a convenient package. It puts out an easy-to-use directory that lists some 200 local agencies and organizations and gives the Service's number for further information.

Beware of False Buzz

Bruce Weinstein, a professional ethicist known as “The Ethics Guy,” criticized the trend toward generating false buzz. For example, the Word of Mouth Marketing Association encourages the use of viral strategies to promote products and services, such as hiring “satisfied customers” to stand in line at restaurants and give loud testimonials. “What this group is trying to do may work in the short term,” says Weinstein. “But the only way to really guarantee, in the long run, not only a loyal customer base but a growing one is for customers to trust you, to believe that you actually have their own interests at heart.”

It’s important also to realize that listing can take lots of forms other than paid space in publications. For example, in many areas, if your cat or dog runs away from home, you list this fact as poignantly as possible on the corner telephone pole or fence post. This sort of listing is so common that if someone in your neighborhood finds a pet, she is very likely to check out that same pole or fence. In rural areas all kinds of information is posted in this way. When Salli was out on a walk along her country road recently she noticed a cardboard sign nailed to a pole: “Warning! Don’t buy! Carl Chase [not his real name] delivers wet wood and won’t return deposit. Ex-buyer.” There is nothing new about this. The Romans used to paint information about upcoming gladiator fights on the walls of buildings, and the Greeks posted important notices on rotating columns at busy locations.

For home service businesses such as chimney sweeping, babysitting, and house-sitting, the laundromat bulletin board is where many people look for help. Colleges and universities are a good source for language schools, tutors, dance instructors, typists, and roommate referral services. In rural areas, being listed on the Farm Trails Map (a guide for visitors interested in buying agricultural products) is one of the most important marketing tools for people selling fruit, nuts, vegetables, livestock, and

Christmas trees. And artists who live in a certain area will print a map along with a short description of their work and host “open studio” weekends. Motels and bed-and-breakfast inns are good places for many small businesses to be listed as part of the establishment’s recommended services.

Having a Web page is automatically a “listing.” Helping people find your website is a unique and specific marketing issue that we cover in every chapter and in detail in Chapter 11. No matter what your business, there are sure to be many excellent places to list its availability at low cost. ●

Personal Recommendations: The First Choice in Marketing

Cost-Effectiveness.....	33
Overcoming Established Buying Habits	38
Basing Your Marketing Plan on Personal Recommendations	39
Trust	40
Backing Up a Good Recommendation With Information.....	40
Responsibility.....	41
When Not to Rely on Word of Mouth for Marketing	42

We hope we have succeeded in getting you to think about the dubious value of advertising for your business, if you hadn't already independently arrived at this conclusion. Now it's time to talk about a marketing strategy that does work: personal recommendations. In our view, promoting personal recommendations is a superior, yet often overlooked, strategy to attract and keep customers.

The idea of people making recommendations to other people is so familiar to us that it often takes a big stretch of the imagination to understand what a significant factor it can be in improving the profitability of your business. Most business owners have no idea just how powerful this tool is because they don't know how to use it effectively. Yet ask yourself how many of the interesting people you have met, places you have visited, and—more to the point—high-quality small businesses with whom you have had positive relationships, have come to you from friends who cared enough to tell you about them.

“It is the thing you look for, ache for.”

—CHARLES GLENN, ORION PICTURES

We prefer the phrase “personal recommendation” over “word of mouth” but we use both phrases in this book largely because “word of mouth” is so commonly used. The problem with word of mouth is that it's often negative. If a customer drives out of your tire business and the tire falls off the rim, you'll get plenty of word of mouth but it won't be good. Personal recommendation, on the other hand, is a spontaneous gift from one generous person to another (or, in the case of the Internet, to many others). Very well-run businesses create a feeling of genuine appreciation that is passed from one customer to another.

Personal recommendation is what we are after in marketing. We don't believe that “any publicity is good publicity” for business. It simply isn't true. Generating “buzz” or “word of mouth” alone is not sufficient to get new customers, as we'll discuss in this chapter.

Cost-Effectiveness

The overriding reason why personal recommendations are a better source of new customers than advertising is that they are more cost-effective. Monetary success in business obviously comes from selling a product or service at a price that substantially exceeds your cost to provide it. The three main costs involved in doing this in any business are:

- providing the product or service the customer wants
- getting new customers, and
- getting repeat business.

The Mouth as Marketing Magic

In the national bestseller *The Tipping Point: How Little Things Can Make a Big Difference*, author Malcolm Gladwell weighs in on the power of word of mouth:

“It is safe to say that word of mouth is—even in this age of mass communications and multi-million-dollar advertising campaigns—still the most important form of human communication. Think, for a moment, about the last expensive restaurant you went to, the last expensive piece of clothing you bought and the last movie you saw. In how many of those cases was your decision about where to spend your money heavily influenced by the recommendation of a friend? There are plenty of advertising executives who think that precisely because of the sheer ubiquity of marketing efforts these days, word-of-mouth appeals have become the only kind of persuasion that most of us respond to anymore.”

Notice that two out of three of these categories have to do with attracting customers. If you can accomplish both of them at a reasonable cost, your business should prosper.

Clearly, the customer who is referred comes to you at a lower cost than the one who sees an advertisement. In addition, as we will discuss in more detail below, a customer who is referred to you is both more likely to return and more apt to tell a friend about your business than is the person who responds to an advertisement. To better illustrate this point, let's look at some businesspeople who have prospered using a personal recommendation marketing strategy.

Sam DuVall, who conceives of eating places as theater, has owned very successful restaurants: The Ritz Cafe in Los Angeles and the Elite Cafe in San Francisco. The Elite Cafe was one of the first places in Northern California to serve New Orleans cuisine. Money was invested in good food and good service and in creating a unique ambiance worth talking about, not in advertising. DuVall neither advertises nor does any paid promotion in the conventional sense, yet the Elite Cafe has been packed every night for years. When asked about his success, DuVall said, "Nothing works as well as word of mouth. People believe in it."

The equally famous and exclusive Los Angeles restaurant Ma Maison takes an anti-advertising stand still further, refusing even to list its phone number in the yellow pages and totally depending on personal recommendations to produce customers. The most highly recommended restaurant in the United States, the French Laundry in Yountville, California, has never advertised.

eBay rarely advertises but encourages its users to spread the good word by hosting a feedback forum. To help assure new users that the auction really works, eBay created a "gripe and praise" forum where people share their experiences, which have been overwhelmingly positive.

The issues of trust and word of mouth recommendation are particularly important for an online store with as large a presence as eBay. The reason is simple: When people are disappointed with a transaction, they can create a website to complain about the business. Internet businesses aren't the only ones subject to online complaints. A Starbucks customer created a website and ended up bringing a class action lawsuit against

Starbucks because of an espresso machine that he bought and tried to return. There were websites about MCI and WorldCom that ran for thousands of pages with complaints from customers and employees. And there were at least five anti-PayPal websites before eBay bought them and settled most of the outstanding lawsuits.

eBay has carried online quality and buyer satisfaction to a higher level by integrating it into the shopping transaction. Here is what an eBay site shows for Lolly and Criggles Childrens Boutique, an excellent children's store:

The screenshot shows an eBay Feedback Profile for the user 'lolly-and-criggles-childrens-boutique'. The profile includes a member photo, a lifetime summary with 1,857 positive ratings and 2 negative ratings, and a detailed breakdown of feedback ratings by time period and criteria.

Member Details

lolly-and-criggles-childrens-boutique (1855 ★)

Member since Mar-07-01 in United States

Lifetime Summary: Positives: 1857 Negatives: 2 | Positive Feedback: 99.9%

Recent Feedback Ratings (last 12 months)

	1 month	6 months	12 months
Positive	7	63	272
Neutral	0	0	0
Negative	0	0	0

Detailed Seller Ratings (since May 2007)

Criteria	Average rating	Number of ratings
Item as described	★★★★★	130
Communication	★★★★★	130
Shipping time	★★★★★	130
Shipping and handling charges	★★★★★	130

Member Quick Links

- Contact member
- View items for sale
- View seller's Store
- View more options

As you can see, there are 1,857 satisfied customers and two dissatisfied customers. The site also includes comments about the transactions and a colored star system to evaluate the trust level of buyers and sellers.

Substituting personal recommendations for advertising doesn't mean that you do nothing but hope that your customers will tell others about your business. In fact, for most businesses, encouraging positive word of mouth is an active and ongoing endeavor involving the creation of a marketing plan that goes to the heart of the business. Many people rate products, services, and even movies online for the benefit of others—people they don't know. These spontaneous postings by readers are the online version of personal recommendation.

The movie industry is obviously affected by personal recommendations. Even though well over a billion dollars is spent every year on promoting new movies, people talking to people is what really counts. According to Marvin Antonowsky, head of marketing for Universal Pictures, “Word of mouth is like wildfire.” This point is well illustrated by the number of low-budget movies that have succeeded with little or no advertising—and by the number of big-budget flops.

Like the movies, book publishing is another industry where lots of money is traditionally spent on advertising but can’t begin to compete with the power of friends telling friends about their discoveries. Twenty-five years ago, *The Road Less Traveled*, by psychiatrist M. Scott Peck, was just another psychology/relationship book languishing on bookstore shelves. Then a few people read it, told their friends, and started a chain reaction that’s still going on. Today, there are well over two million copies in print.

The two people most responsible for spreading word of the book were one of the publisher’s sales representatives, who was so impressed that he insisted that book buyers at stores read the book, and a teacher in Buffalo, New York, who gave copies to teachers and ministers she knew. As a result, two churches invited the author to speak, the local bookstore began selling hundreds of copies, and the publisher (Simon & Schuster) took another look at the book. A promotional tour boosted sales, which have kept rising. The author has since published a teaching guide to the original book and a new book expanding on the ideas in *The Road Less Traveled*.

The Importance of Online Comments

In 2006, 81% of surveyed CompUSA shoppers said that they considered online customer ratings and reviews important when researching or planning a purchase. Though an online comment—positive or negative—is not as powerful as a direct interpersonal exchange, it can be very important to your business.

Many people depend on online recommendations. And young people rely heavily on them and are very likely to be influenced by the Internet when deciding what video to rent, movie to see, or what album to purchase. These individuals often have wide-reaching social networks and communicate regularly with dozens of others—with the potential to reach thousands. It has been estimated that the 82-million Generation Y population (aged six to 24) influences 50% of all spending in the U.S.

New enterprises can quickly reap the benefits of relying on personal recommendations from satisfied customers. Sound Vision, a four-year-old electronics business in Marin County, California, started by brothers Scott and Earl, specializes in designing and installing high-end electronics equipment for homes and businesses. Scott had previously worked in the industry and knew the manufacturers, all of whom assured him that if he stuck to his plan (creative designs using great components) and paid attention to his customer base, he would need no other marketing. Sure enough, friends told friends and customers told customers, so that now the business has as much work as it can handle. The secret: Don't stray from the successful niche you've developed, and reward your customers and colleagues. With Sound Vision, customers get a hand-written thank you note with a coupon for dinner at a local restaurant when they refer others to their store; and electricians, carpenters, and contractors receive Sound Vision T-shirts when they work on a Sound Vision job.

Overcoming Established Buying Habits

Personal recommendations are also one of the best ways to overcome a big hurdle for a business that wants more customers: the tendency of people to patronize the same businesses over and over. The average number of significant monetary transactions (not counting newspapers, carfare, and so on) for a family in the United States is about 65 per month. This means that if you are typical, someone in your family opens a wallet, writes a check, or hands over a plastic card 65 times each month to pay for something. For most of us, the great majority of these transactions are conducted with people we have done business with before. Consider your own habits. You probably tend to repeatedly patronize the same dry cleaner, hardware store, dentist, plant nursery, and exercise facility. If you're like most people, it takes a substantial nudge to get you to change one of these business relationships.

Given the fact that most people are fairly stable in their daily business patterns, how do you encourage a significant number to give your business a chance? Or, put more concretely, how do you get people to try your stress reduction class, law firm, or laundromat, or the new computer you are selling out at the shopping center? Personal recommendations are the answer.

Overcoming buying habits is difficult. However, once you realize that the majority of people locate a new product or service based on personal recommendations, not advertising, you have at least half the battle won. To win the other half, you must make your loyal customers, employees, suppliers, and friends an integral part of your marketing plan so that your business will be recommended enthusiastically and often.

Basing Your Marketing Plan on Personal Recommendations

Once you have decided to base your marketing plan on personal recommendations, your next job is to understand why people go out of their way to recommend certain goods and services and not others. What gets them motivated to sing the praises of a business they think highly of? Have you told a friend about a particular business—perhaps a seamstress, gardener, dentist, or cheese store—in the last six months? What were the things about each of these businesses that caused you to recommend them?

Most of this book is devoted to analyzing these kinds of questions. But the answers can be summed up as follows: If your business is truly worthy of being recommended, you will be able to answer all or most of the following questions in the affirmative:

- Is your business running smoothly on a day-to-day basis?
- Are your financial records in order and up to date?
- Are your employees knowledgeable about your product or service and enthusiastic about working for you?
- Do you offer top-quality goods or services?
- Do your customers have confidence that if something goes wrong with the products or services you sell, you stand behind them?
- Is your website being kept up to date?

Just the simple exercise of asking and answering these few questions may prompt you to make changes in your business. The rest of this book should help you implement changes that will really allow you to take advantage of personal recommendations.

Before we deal with the many practical techniques you can use to encourage customers to recommend your goods and services, it's important to understand the elements that go into a positive

recommendation. To succeed in the long run, a marketing campaign based on personal recommendation must be in tune with all of them.

Trust

Before you accept a recommendation from someone, you must trust his or her judgment and integrity. Dr. Sidney Levy, chairman of the marketing department at Northwestern University, explains it this way: “More personal than advertising and smacking of “inside” information, word of mouth can be a uniquely powerful marketing tool. If somebody you trust suggests something is meaningful, that is more important to you than information presented in an impersonal way.”

A good example is when a friend goes out of his way to introduce you to someone. Such introductions are explicit or implied personal recommendations, and most people are careful about making them. When you are on the receiving end of one, you evaluate the person making the introduction as carefully as you do the person being introduced. For instance, think of three people you work with and then imagine that each recommends a different pilot (none of whom you know) to take you up in a small plane. Whom would you be more likely to go with? Would you go with any of them? How much would your choice be influenced by the person doing the recommending?

Backing Up a Good Recommendation With Information

We must also consider whether or not our friends know what they are talking about when they make a recommendation about a business. One friend, Walter, once ordered bouillabaisse, tasted it, made a face, and quietly sent it back, complaining it “tasted fishy.” Did he confuse bouillabaisse with borscht? Would you take seriously his recommendation of a seafood restaurant or fish market?

Another friend, Linda Richardson, spent three months traveling around the U.S. and Asia studying coffee roasting methods in preparation for

starting her own coffee shop. Linda knows more about coffee than anyone else we know, so when we took a trip to San Diego recently, we tried out her favorite coffee shop. The espresso was great, as we knew it would be. The difference between Walter's and Linda's ability to make reliable recommendations is obvious. Linda knew her coffee. Walter did not know his fish.

Finally, think for a minute about how many people you know who almost always steer you accurately, and others who sound off on every subject whether they know anything about it or not.

Word of mouth works incredibly fast on the Internet. Even a seemingly innocuous email sent to a good-sized mailing list with an instruction to "pass this email on" can easily spread like wildfire. Some people like to keep everyone on their mail lists informed about things they deem important—which can sometimes be virtually anything and everything. Our advice is to carefully consider and check out information before passing it on. A friend or business associate might understand one "save a starving child, click on this website" scheme, but will quickly learn to mistrust your judgment if you do it over and over.

Responsibility

Because of the nature of friendship, personal recommendations carry with them a degree of responsibility for the outcome. If your friend introduces someone to you who turns out to be untrustworthy, it can deeply strain the friendship, and your friend must make a sincere attempt to make the situation right or risk eroding your friendship.

Obviously, carelessly recommending a business can also strain a friendship. Imagine your feelings if a friend recommended a carpenter who tried to jack up the price in the middle of the job, or a computer consultant who screwed up your payroll system and then disappeared two days before payday.

And if a product or service you recommend to someone doesn't work out, it's not always clear what you can do to deal with your friend's hurt feelings. For example, if your favorite hairdresser gives your mother-in-law a frizzy permanent, you will probably hear about it for years, whether you buy her a filet mignon dinner or not.

Given the responsibility that goes with making a recommendation, people will not recommend your business unless they feel confident in it. As a direct consequence, your business policies and practices concerning errors, mistakes, and problems are of great concern to your customers who make recommendations. They will recommend your business only if they can really trust you to stand behind your product or service should something go wrong.

When Not to Rely on Word of Mouth for Marketing

We come now to an important warning about the power of word of mouth. There is an extremely good reason why many American businesses may not want to adopt a marketing plan based on the sorts of things we discuss in this book. This reason is simple: Word of mouth is just as effective in getting out the bad news about a business as it is in spreading good tidings. In fact, the Ford Motor Company estimates that a dissatisfied car owner tells 22 people, while a satisfied car owner tells eight.

These figures may be going up; with the Internet, it is easy for knowledgeable people to complain to tens of thousands of other people—and they do. According to Burson-Marsteller, the world's fifth largest PR company, online influencers will forward positive messages to an average of 11 people and negative messages to an average of 17.

A good example is the former website DrKoop.com. Dr. C. Everett Koop was a well-respected Surgeon General in two Republican administrations. He started a website that used his name to dispense medical information and advice. His site spent \$147 million to solicit

business on other websites and was one of the most-visited health sites on the Internet. Why did it fail? Negative word of mouth. Nurses in America had complained for years about rashes caused by rubber gloves and been told by Koop when he was the Surgeon General that it was an imaginary problem. When DrKoop.com was founded, word got out that Dr. Koop had been on retainer to a rubber glove company at the time he dismissed the nurses' complaints. Moreover, "the site came under attack ... for failing to notify visitors that a group of hospitals had paid to be included in a section on community resources, and that Koop himself was receiving a commission for products sold on the site." (*Industry Standard*, April 17, 2000.)

Certainly, if your product or service is no better than average, you should put down this book and avoid like the plague a marketing plan based on word of mouth. Businesses with average or negative attributes succeed only if they rely on such things as extensive advertising and high-rent locations. Such is often the case with businesses that cater to (or prey upon) tourists. For example, in Boston's wharf area, there are numerous restaurants that Bostonians sneer at but unsuspecting tourists are eager to patronize. Many visitors don't know any Bostonians and don't have the benefit of the natives' negative word of mouth. They don't know that when they trustingly order local lobster, far from getting a freshly caught crustacean, they are being served lobster fresh from the freezer.

We've found, after years of giving marketing advice to small businesses, that it's bad practice to help a business devise a marketing plan to encourage personal recommendations unless it can handle more customers. Even if your business is in decent shape, it may still not be run well enough to handle the expansion that a marketing plan based on personal recommendations will bring and still maintain its quality. When a business is not ready for expansion, a large influx of new customers can easily produce a waking nightmare complete with dissatisfied customers, low employee morale, and general frustration at

not being able to provide good service. Naturally, when this happens, customers will tell their friends, and a downward business spiral begins.

For example, a well-known shoe manufacturer sent out a mailer advertising a sale. Salli was excited, as she has a very narrow foot and the manufacturer advertised her size in styles she liked. When she went to the store, she was very disappointed because not one of the styles was available in her size. She was told by a frazzled saleswoman that they only stocked one of each style in each size! Still, since she was promised the shoes she wanted were available from the warehouse, Salli decided to order two pairs. A week later, she received a phone call saying one pair was actually no longer being made. A week after that came a rather poignant note from the salesgirl and her manager saying the other pair was also unavailable. They did enclose a 20% off coupon for her next visit. Needless to say—there won't be a next time.

One of the largest HMOs in the country continually spends large sums of money advertising for new clients while leaving their current clients standing in long lines at the pharmacy and unable to get appointments with their doctors. When they finally are able to schedule an appointment, they are allotted such a short time as to leave both patient and doctor frustrated. The results: an exodus of doctors who can no longer tolerate the situation and dissatisfied customers who are not shy to tell anyone who will listen. One of the authors listened to the complaints of an elderly woman propped up on her cane as she waited in line for her medicine while another patient went ranting down the hallway shouting, "Stop spending money for commercials and get me a doctor!"

Marketing Without Advertising Checklist

- ☐ 1. My product or service is up to date and is the best it can be.
- ☐ 2. I have an open, visible, understandable, and very generous recourse policy, which is clearly posted on my website.
- ☐ 3. I can clearly describe my business and so can most of my clients, suppliers, friends, and employees.
- ☐ 4. My pricing is clear and complete and tells customers what they need to know about my level of expertise and my target clientele. The price allows them to tailor elements to their needs.
- ☐ 5. My business is open in its financial information, management policies, physical layout, and operating functions.
- ☐ 6. My clients know as much as they want to know about my product or service, including the ways it is outstanding and unique. Referrals and evaluations from other respected people in the field as well as from customers are easily available and posted on the website.
- ☐ 7. Old clients and others who have lost track of the business can easily find it in countless listings, reference materials, Internet search engines, and Web directories, and through neighbors and business associates.
- ☐ 8. I have a complete email list of my current and former clients as well as my suppliers, friends, and interested parties. When relevant, referral sources are noted.
- ☐ 9. I have a current calendar of marketing events and regularly scheduled activities of interest to which I invite my customers and other appropriate associates. Everyone who attends feels a part of my community when they leave.
- ☐ 10. I know how big I want my business to be and am prepared to handle growth created by my marketing. I am prepared and alert to cutting it off whenever a new customer gets better treatment than an old client.

The Physical Appearance of Your Business

Conform to Industry Norms.....	49
Your Business's Appearance.....	52
Cleanliness.....	52
Smell.....	53
Clutter.....	55
Sound	57
Evaluating Your Physical Appearance	58
Fantasy: A Growing Part of Retail Marketing.....	60
The Test of Time.....	64

Most of us give the physical appearance of our business a great deal of thought—at least at the beginning. Signs, packaging, window displays, and office layout are all given great attention. Unfortunately, as the months turn into years, we tend to develop sloppy habits. Window displays that were once cleaned weekly and redone monthly now stay up a couple of weeks longer and are rarely cleaned in the interim. Employees who were once required to look fresh and clean now sometimes work in T-shirts and raggedy jeans, and no one has gotten around to fixing the dent in the delivery truck or thought to run it through a car wash.

While the graphic presentation (especially packaging, promotional material, and listings) of most businesses improves with time, carelessness almost always creeps into other areas. Sloppy storage areas and restrooms, messy bookshelves in offices, boxes of files piled in inappropriate places, and half-dead plants in the corner of the office are all things that a business owner may hardly see, but are sure to turn off customers. If this is what it looks like in the visible parts, customers wonder, what might lurk in the file cabinets and drawers hidden from view? And, more important, who can have confidence in the skill of management?

Whether you are about to open a business or have been in operation for some time, review all of the key elements of the appearance of your business. Pretend to be a customer and ask yourself whether the appearance of the business would inspire your trust. If you feel you are just too close to your business to really see it with fresh eyes, elicit the help of a friend, or offer to check out another business in exchange for getting an assessment of your own.

Keep in mind five goals for your business's appearance:

- It should conform to, or exceed, the norms of the business you are in.
- It should be squeaky clean.

- It should have an appropriate smell.
- It should be uncluttered.
- Your website and blog should be updated often.

Conform to Industry Norms

When your business's appearance isn't what your customers expect, you risk making them uncomfortable—even when the divergence improves the look of your business. Customers have a fairly clear image of what most businesses “should” look like. If they don't know it from their own observation, they rely on movies, television, or magazines for models.

When they encounter a business that doesn't conform to these ideas, they feel dissonance, the sense that something is out of whack, out of balance. It's an uncomfortable feeling that many people won't be able to verbalize; they just know something is wrong.

The point is simple: If you give your customers something that they don't expect, it is essential that you examine how they will react to this divergence. In retailing, for example, a large amount of densely packed stock is generally associated with low prices, while widely spaced stock conjures up images of high price tags. A clothing store such as Ross Dress for Less, displaying racks packed with clothes, is presumably cheaper than a store such as Comme des Garçons, of San Francisco, Tokyo, Paris, or New York, where each display features a very limited number of items. By tinkering with these customer expectations, you risk creating confusion. A customer shopping in a jewelry store that offers a few items, widely spaced, would very likely find low prices disconcerting and might wonder if the pricing was wrong or the goods were fakes or, worse yet, stolen. Disconcerting customers a little is by no means always bad. The store selling bargain jewelry in an uncluttered atmosphere might well prosper, assuming other marketing techniques were used to reassure the customer.

Carefully planned deviations from the norm can be effective. For instance, an inexpensive restaurant can emphasize widely spaced tables and a quiet atmosphere if this deviation from the expected is clearly understood, as might be the case if it used a name such as “Beggar’s Banquet.” Similarly, an uncluttered discount appliance store which displays a relatively small amount of merchandise works fine if it clearly communicates to customers that the appliances displayed are samples and orders are filled from a nearby warehouse. Consumer Distributing, a discount retail hard goods chain, uses this model.

Many types of businesses traditionally have miserable surroundings. Auto scrap yards are an extreme example; many laundromats are another. This is almost certainly one of the reasons why many small yards have failed in the last few years. Customers will no longer put up with greasy, dangerous surroundings. If the appearance of typical businesses like yours is generally considered to be poor, rising above the industry norm is an essential part of building customer trust. An example of a business that exceeds the industry norm is an optometrist who has a clear, meaningful display in the window instead of the usual pile of empty eyeglass frames and faded photos of models wearing last year’s sunglasses. Another is a plumber with a clever and educational window display featuring different types of pipes and fittings instead of a couple of pink toilets. Similarly, auto repair shops with clean offices and waiting areas and spotless restrooms are a welcome improvement over the usual dirty, battered-looking garage waiting areas we have all come to dread.

Professional office waiting areas provide another example where standards are commonly low. A doctor, dentist, architect, or lawyer who has a well-designed office with comfortable furniture, often-changed educational displays, and materials about the particular area of practice, as well as a broad selection of magazines less than six months old, is still a welcome exception to the norm. Many Nordstrom department stores make their atmosphere more pleasant than most retail stores by

inviting local piano teachers to play a grand piano in their high fashion departments. It's good for the teachers, too, who can give out their cards.

Going beyond industry norms and communicating the improvements to your customers should be a goal in any good marketing plan. The upholsterer across the street from our office, who currently displays two beautifully restored art deco chairs in his window instead of the more typical pile of fabric (which tells us nothing about the quality of his workmanship or his specialties), is a good illustration. And then there is a travel agent we know who decided that the usual run of travel posters was simply a bore and instead displays (and changes monthly) period costumes of the country he is featuring. In this regard, one of our favorite store windows is Campus Shoe Repair in Westwood, California, near UCLA. It displays a mechanized cobbler resoling a shoe, along with miniature replicas of a football, a baseball glove, boots, and other items the proprietor can fix.

In the course of our work, we have been asked to go into a lot of business settings and suggest changes. Indeed, we have done this so often that it has become almost second nature to walk into a business and mentally redesign it. Perhaps you, too, have been tempted to do this. If not, why not begin? Think about how you would improve the appearance of the next ten businesses you visit, keeping in mind that your redesign plan should work with, not against, industry norms. Once you get adept at this, apply the lessons you have learned to your own business.

British Airways wanted to keep customers happy, so it asked regular customers on the transatlantic run what they most wanted. The answer was an overwhelming "Leave us alone and let us sleep!" Passengers wanted their own comfy universe, and they got it. British Airways first-class passengers currently dine on a five-course meal with fine linen and candlelight in the waiting lounge before they board the aircraft, and then it's to sleep right after take-off.

The seat reclines almost to horizontal—as close to a bed as you can get. The airline lends you a two-piece running suit that is like a nice pair of pajamas and provides you with a comforter and face mask. If you don't want to sleep, you have your choice of movies at your own seat and an in-flight banquet.

Your Business's Appearance

Now let's take a look at some of the most critical aspects of your business's appearance.

Cleanliness

Cleanliness is crucially important in all businesses, and is perceived by the public as a measure of management competence. Despite this, most businesses, whether retail, wholesale, restaurant, consulting, or professional, are not clean. If you doubt it, think about how many businesses you know that are spotless. Not very many, we bet. And those that do meet this high standard are almost surely very successful.

Years ago, when gasoline stations were trying to attract customers, many displayed signs extolling how sanitary their restrooms were. These signs often stated that the restrooms were for the convenience of customers and if everything wasn't perfect to let the management know. Some large oil companies even had strict national inspection programs to support their claims. Then along came the gasoline shortage, and many gas station operators became so arrogant they forgot about time-tested good business principles, including clean restrooms and friendly service. While there are, of course, a number of complicated economic reasons why so many gas stations have failed in the last few years, certainly one is that most are so poorly run that customers have absolutely no reason to

be loyal to them. Restrooms remain a good barometer as to how well a business is run.

By contrast, part of the phenomenal growth of several national franchises, including Supercuts and Midas Mufflers, is directly connected to their reputation for cleanliness. Before these companies changed industry norms, many barber shops and brake shops were notoriously dirty. In each of these instances, the commitment to be extremely clean was powerful enough to transform an industry.

McDonald's excels in cleanliness, keeping the eating area, the service area, the kitchen, and bathrooms spotlessly clean. You can count on McDonald's to provide a clean environment even in places such as China, Russia, and New York, all of which are generally difficult places to find clean toilets.

We recently dined at an Italian restaurant outfitted with a changing table in the restroom that was so filthy that we left—skipping dessert. And we'll never go back.

Smell

Smell is such an important, but often overlooked, aspect of a good marketing plan that it's worth focusing on in detail. Good smells can be an incredibly powerful part of the image of many businesses—and inappropriate ones can ruin it.

The smell of disinfectant can be a positive attribute in a medical environment and a definite negative in a bakery. Certainly the location of bathrooms and the resulting smells in a retail store, coffee shop, or medical clinic can influence clients very strongly. For example, the authors visited a well-known luncheon restaurant that boasted great sandwiches accompanied by a fashion show, but left after five minutes because they were seated close to the restroom, which reeked of cleansers.

Peet's Coffee stores in the San Francisco Bay area are a famous instance of a business that owes a large part of its success to a magnificent smell.

Over 30 years ago, Mr. Peet opened a tiny neighborhood shop to sell the coffee beans he imported and roasted on the premises. Coffee drinkers could not resist the aroma of fresh-roasted coffee that permeated the immediate neighborhood. When they ventured inside, they were met with a pleasant surprise—a little coffee bar where they could enjoy a superior cup of coffee for a reasonable price. These and other techniques contributed to Peet's becoming the first extremely successful coffee store in an area of Berkeley, California, that has since become famous as the first true gourmet ghetto in modern America. The original Peet's was the model for Seattle's Starbucks in its early days. The many coffee stores in our neighborhoods are there at least in part because Mr. Peet opened the windows next to his roaster, and the customers flooded in.

Scent for Sale

Providing the appropriate smell has become big business for Scents Air, which grossed \$48 million in 2005. Located in Charlotte, North Carolina, the company sells custom blended scents to hotels and resorts and to attract shoppers to various displays within stores. The scents are found in high-end cars and are used to lure customers to out-of-the-way sites. Smell is so important, subtle, and individual, that we caution against using this approach.

Fine Design, which sells furnishings, antiques, and sweaters in New York City, uses pine boughs to fill the store with a pleasant aroma around the holidays. Although this technique may sound obvious, we encounter very few businesses that use smell positively. Unfortunately, smells more commonly detract from the atmosphere. Ice cream stores—because sugar and oil don't smell good—top the list.

Good smells aren't an effective marketing technique only for retailers. A real estate broker friend in Dallas, Scott Park, is very successful in the residential market. One of his approaches is to fill the houses he

is showing with fragrant fresh flowers and to bake an apple pie in the oven at a very low temperature for the four to six hours that a house is typically shown.

Similarly, in the Urasenke Tea School in New York, which teaches students the traditional art of the Japanese tea ceremony, the teachers wipe with a moist rag the tatami mats the students walk on, to bring out the delicate bamboo-like fragrance of fresh tatami.

Clutter

Small neighborhood grocery stores traditionally have a problem with clutter, not only because they are inefficiently designed to handle the high volume of incoming products but also because they are often short of storage space. This is one factor that led to the success of 7-Eleven or Quick-Stop type convenience stores, which feature an open, uncluttered look that is much more appealing to many customers.

Cleanliness and lack of clutter aren't only important to retail stores, of course. For example, one of our editors recently reported stopping by the office of the company that delivered diapers for his baby. The dirty, sloppy office looked like it belonged to a poorly-run machine shop. Record keeping was so disorganized that it took five minutes to find the correct account card. In addition, the counter was dirty, the windows hadn't been washed recently, and there was no display material, publications, or anything else to create a feeling that anyone cared about babies. Indeed, the whole atmosphere was so disheartening that he cancelled the diaper service, even though the diapers delivered to his house had always seemed clean enough.

Or how about a picture framing shop that, of all businesses, ought to be aesthetically pleasing. The one down the street sports streaky windows behind which are piles of dusty frames and dull racks of unassembled frames instead of framed artwork that would capture the attention of passers-by.

Clean Up Your Mess

Building and landscape contractors are judged, in part, by how they leave the job site at the end of the day. Sloppy contractors may leave their equipment out or leave cigarette butts and used drink cans on the ground. This can be demoralizing to the already disrupted homeowner. And to the passerby it looks as if the contractor doesn't care and probably does shoddy work.

When Michael had a new roof installed by Summit Roofing, they did a first rate professional job, cleaned up every day, and left the area around the house cleaner than they found it. He recommends Summit to all his friends and acquaintances.

Nearby there is another marketing disaster: a store large enough to run ads on television that has for months had seven sloppy handwritten signs stuck to its glass door with yellowing scotch tape. The signs aren't even of the temporary "closed for vacation" variety; they appear to be permanent. To make matters worse, the store sells eyeglasses!

In the late 1950s, Lawrence Ferlinghetti, well aware of the industry norms for small independent bookstores, was determined to let his staff and customers know that their store wasn't going to have the typical dingy cave-like atmosphere. He built his idea into the name of his now-famous City Lights Bookstore, which was truly a pleasant, bright, and uncluttered store. His customers appreciated this innovation. Today, this idea has been copied by bookstores nationwide, including many of the national chains.

On the Internet, one of the best examples of an uncluttered website is Google, one of the first online businesses to understand the allure of keeping a site simple and straightforward. Many people may not remember the days when search engine sites typically were cluttered with banner ads and blinking messages almost to the point of obscuring the

search results themselves. Since the intuitive measure of search engine competence is the ability to deliver a focused group of results, Google communicated the correct message: a clean uncluttered page with nearly 98% of white space. Google rose to be one of the top three search engines and established the cleanliness norms for the industry.

When Salli brought her new-to-her car in for its first tune-up at the C&W Ford repair shop in Sebastopol, California, she was surprised and impressed with how uncluttered and clean the shop was. The place she had been taking her car to did a good enough job but always left her with a slightly queasy feeling. The carpet in the waiting room was stained and full of lint, and the entire office was grungy. She couldn't quite see through the grimy window where they worked on her car. The contrast was amazing. At the Ford company, every tool was in its place, the shop was open, airy, and clean and the office sparkled.

Sound

Some business owners feel nervous without sound in their office or establishment, but it can be difficult to find the right type of sound for a business. If you've ever gone to lunch at a restaurant where you've been forced to listen to loud music, or dined at a chain restaurant with five different TV's blaring, or had to wait in a doctor's office listening to *Days of Our Lives*, you understand how important sound can be to a business.

As consumers, we have learned to put up with unpleasant sounds and are delighted when we find a business that gets it right. Ask yourself what kind of sound, if any, might be appropriate for your business. A store that sells large garden stone work in Petaluma, California, uses the sound from a simple waterfall in one corner of their store—the sound is soothing, appropriate, and unobtrusive. An acupuncturist may keep a selection of relaxing tapes in each individual room so clients can listen, or not, as they wish. Be sure to ask your clients for feedback if you introduce a new sound element into your business.

Now it's time for you to do some work. Look at your business as an outsider might, using the checklist below to evaluate whether your business conforms to or exceeds industry norms, is truly clean, smells appropriate, and is free of clutter.

Evaluating Your Physical Appearance

Step 1. In the “Your Business” column, list the key aspects of the physical appearance of your business. We can't do this for you because there are thousands of types of businesses. To give you ideas, we've included at the top of the worksheet a list of elements that commonly apply to retail and wholesale businesses, organized by category: outside elements such as signage and architecture; and inside aspects such as cleanliness, lighting, and so on.

Step 2. Rate your business on each of the elements you have listed as “poor,” “adequate,” or “excellent.” Use the “Comments” column to describe specific details.

Step 3. Also in the “Comments” column, make a note of any particular elements in your business that differ significantly from industry norms, and ask yourself if the positive reasons for this difference are clearly communicated to your customers.

Fantasy: A Growing Part of Retail Marketing

For many centuries there has been a trend to mix fantasy and product sales. Today, the trend has grown to such an extent that all businesses need to think about fantasy—especially when considering a business’s appearance.

Medieval trade fairs in Europe and West Africa had clowns, dancers, musicians, puppets, and storytellers to create a festive atmosphere. The fantasy that these entertainers were trying to create was “paradise.” Today, businesses create fantasies that stimulate demand for their products.

We have fantasies in the form of physical locations; Disneyland is a good example. Disneyland has a fantasy turn-of-the-century Main Street, jungles, and underwater worlds. At Tinseltown Studios near Disneyland in Anaheim, California, you can totally indulge your desire to be a star at a fantasy Academy Awards ceremony. Customers at Tinseltown are not treated as guests but as screen idols. Once you enter through the door you are barraged by autograph seekers, the paparazzi, reporters, and TV crews. As you walk down the long red carpet, all eyes are on you. Tinseltown lives up to its slogan of “taking unknown people and turning them into screen legends.”

Many retail stores go directly for a Disneyland-like reproduction. Victoria’s Secret lingerie stores, for example, have a racy boudoir ambiance. Store windows are usually fantasy-land creations on a miniature scale. Many retail business interiors are sketches of a fantasy, with images and artifacts on the walls and in the aisles.

Restaurants often invoke a fantasy atmosphere, whether it is Olde England with leather benches, wooden beams, and imitation pewter mugs or a Polynesian island with bamboo, fish nets, and tropical paintings.

Many direct-mail catalogues are 100% fantasy creations. They show people in landscapes and exotic settings with distinctive clothing and

accoutrements for sale. In many cases, the descriptions of the items read like an exotic travel brochure.

The growth of direct-mail catalogues in the past two decades has played a role in accelerating the active use of fantasy in business. There are many cases of catalogues that paved the way for retail stores in keeping with the catalogue's fantasy theme, from Smith & Hawken and Crabtree & Evelyn to Victoria's Secret and The Sharper Image.

For example, Victorian Trading Company, a mail order company in Prairie Village, Kansas, that promises "a delightful hodge-podge of the fascinating, the beautiful and the irresistible," recently opened a retail store that carries its fantasy catalogue a step beyond. The store features red velvet drapes, tinkling music-box melodies, cabbage rose chintz walls—and a costumed staff ready to offer shoppers a cup of Snickerdoodle tea while they peruse the wares.

But in more traditional businesses, it is hard to know how much fantasy to invest in. A law office that has a modest investment in shelves filled with law books (rarely used anymore, in the electronic age) and high-back leather chairs is better off than a similar office resembling a sterile dental waiting room. But putting a large investment into maple burl paneling, a fireplace with a real fire, and a courtroom railing might not be justified.

Gone are the days when a vacation hotel is sought for its uniformity. Today's pleasure traveler who can afford it seeks the thrill of a unique experience. She wants to escape the familiar and try on a new identity—if only for a weekend. The late Bill Kimpton's Kimpton Group operates several such fantasy-oriented boutique hotels; the one we personally enjoy is the Triton near San Francisco's Chinatown. The Triton is a showcase for local artists. A dreamy, flowing mural of pastel hues covers the wall and ceiling of the lobby. Handcrafted tables and lamps and rock and roll music create a mad-hatter tea party type atmosphere. Like most of Kimpton's boutique hotels, the occupancy rate is around 80%.

A new business based entirely on fantasy, such as a multimedia production company, needs to put a significant investment into the fantasy appearance of the workspace. Fantasy is the industry norm in this emerging field.

No existing business is exempt from thinking about the fantasy aspect of business. Whole new businesses are being created out of the consumer's immense appetite for new fantasies.

We can expect to see marketing in the near future where the customer who fantasizes being an academic can order an entire cozy, academic reading room with a complete wall of books, bookshelves, framed prints for the wall, a leather chair, reading lamps, Persian carpets, suitable clothes, pens, eyeglasses, and videotapes with information and suggested conversations for the would-be academic.

Our favorite recent example of a business that fully comprehends the notion of fantasy is in Tokyo (always the leading edge in marketing) near Roppongi Corner. This retail store, Pango Pango, was named after an imaginary island with an imaginary culture. In the store is everything one could buy on a trip to this island: clothes, sandals, jewelry, fabrics, art pieces for the wall, furniture, and incense. The design of everything is perfect to the last detail and is a synthesis of elements from Southeast Asia. All the pieces for sale are custom-made for the store.

Whatever your business, it is worth thinking about the fantasies concerning your product or service that would support additional sales. Think boldly, because we are in an era of bold immersive fantasies. Doctors, lawyers, chimney sweeps, and taxi drivers are not immune to this emerging marketing trend. We have already seen doctor's offices that feel like a science lab and sell books, videos, and magazine subscriptions about their specialties, including toy medical equipment and hospital uniforms—all done with style and professional dignity. We already know of taxi drivers who drive outrageous classic cars, sell models of their vehicle, and offer photos of the passenger sitting in the driver's seat, properly attired.

One client, Terry Miller, a women's clothing designer and manufacturer whose business is based in San Francisco (the Terry McHugh store), had been selling to major department stores for many years. Finally, she grew tired of having to produce a high volume of top-quality goods under tight time pressure on a slim profit margin and then wait months to be paid. Sensibly, Miller decided to cut back on department store sales at the same time she opened the doors of her manufacturing studio to customers and developed a direct sales business. Unfortunately, her direct sales business took off with all the pizzazz of a cold turtle.

Convinced that her direct sales concept was a good one despite the poor results, Miller called in one of the authors for a consultation. When Michael visited Miller's manufacturing studio, he realized immediately that the physical setup was not what most people would expect from a top-of-the-line design studio. Too many details conflicted with the romantic popular image of what such a business should look like that people see in movies and on TV. For example, the women sewing the garments had unattractive piles of cloth and racks of hangers next to their stations, and the design table was cluttered with books, papers, and the occasional abandoned coffee cup. Worst of all, the finished clothing hanging on the racks in the work space displayed price tags.

Michael recommended that Miller redesign her studio to conform more to her customers' image as seen on TV and in the movies. Miller agreed to give it a try. She brought in several mannequins, which she draped with a design the women were currently sewing. She also displayed elegant sketches and pattern swatches on the walls near the design table, cleaned up the table itself, and created a little sitting area complete with the new editions of high-fashion magazines such as *Vogue* and *Elle*. Most important, she removed price tags from the garments in the work room; only the clothing in a separate sales room was tagged. Miller also kept the boxes used to ship clothing to stores such as Bloomingdale's and Saks stacked prominently in the workroom. Direct sales doubled in two months and doubled again in four.

Later she moved to a retail store that has a design and manufacturing section that could have come from anyone's fantasy of what such a set-up should look like. Her business is booming, and she's looking to expand.

The Test of Time

Time and success are not the friends of marketing. As years go by and a business finds its loyal market, the issues of physical appearance can become more difficult. Too often, owners, managers, staff, and regular customers become accustomed to the look of a business. This comfort that comes with age in business is unfortunate. It's always better to view your business through the more critical eyes of new customers.

One way to avoid becoming lax about your business's appearance is to make changes on a scheduled basis. As a fifth, tenth, or 20th anniversary approaches, think: Time for some changes in my business's physical appearance. Changes in a successful business can be subtle—making the new customer feel welcome and the loyal one still at home.

Greens Restaurant in San Francisco, one of the premier vegetarian restaurants in America, started making changes two years before its 25th anniversary. By the time of the celebration, many small and subtle changes had already taken place. The main art on two walls was changed, many additions were made to the menu, the new carpet was a different color, and changes were made to the lighting, the flowers, and the tables in the entrance area. Everything made Greens feel new and clean, yet loyal customers hardly noticed anything was different. The mood, service, and atmosphere remained the same. As one loyal customer said: "Something has changed, but I don't know what it is."

Osmosis, an enzyme bath spa designated one of the top ten day spas in the United States by Travel and Leisure, recognizes the importance of keeping a fresh image (www.osmosis.com). Owner Michael Stusser notes: "Any business, and especially a hospitality business, has to be

renewed constantly to feel alive to clients. A business that radiates robustness and enthusiasm attracts clients and spending like a magnet. If everything remains the same day in and day out, it gets static and there is a stale feeling in the air. It's palpable. It can be as simple as fresh flowers and a new greeting. If clients sense that your place of business is a constant work in progress, striving for great goals, they will keep coming back just to see the progress if nothing else."

Keeping Your Website Fresh

One of our favorite businesses is both a brick and mortar store and an outstanding Internet site: Due Maternity. Due Maternity was started by Albert and Shannon DiPadova in 2003 when they opened in Santa Barbara, California.

Due Maternity grew so fast—with over 50,000 online customers in the first year—that they were able to open stores in Atlanta and Austin, and a new headquarters and distribution center in San Francisco. By 2007 they had five retail outlets.

The genius of the Due Maternity website (www.duematernity.com) is hard to describe because it changes every day. Shoppers generally visit the website an average of 13 times before making a purchase. To keep their interest, the website has to be constantly changing.

When we talked with them in 2007, the website had a variety of "future mommy" tools ranging from a calculator that shows the countdown to delivery, a baby astrological analysis, a baby name selector with over 16,000 names, and dozens of other useful tools. Many of the tools use a sign-in registration and generate an email list for Due Maternity. People who sign in are referred to as "community members" and are given their own website with options for custom announcement cards and photo galleries.



Pricing

Easy-to-Understand Prices	68
Complete Prices.....	70
Giving Customers Choice About Price	74
Internet Pricing	77

A crucial element in any good marketing plan based on building customer trust is a sound pricing policy. Pricing is a key factor in determining your customers' expectations. To use a somewhat exaggerated example, a classy saloon that has cognac on its menu for \$3.99 and serves it in a plastic glass will never be considered trustworthy. Similarly, a lawyer or architect who charges \$37.75 an hour will have a very difficult time convincing potential clients that she does high-quality work.

Some pricing tips:

- Make your prices straightforward and easy to understand.
- Pricing should be complete, including everything a customer expects.
- In setting your prices, give the customer reasonable control over the purchase transaction.
- On the Internet, you may need to break prices down to the lowest usable unit.

Let's look at each of these elements individually.

Easy-to-Understand Prices

It's important to make sure your pricing policy does not confuse or mislead your customers. The price you state should reflect the total cost of the transaction. It should also be an honest one considering all the circumstances of the transaction. For example, if you specialize in selling bulk goods, your price per unit should go down as volume increases, at a regular and reasonable rate. A produce market that offers grapefruit at "25 cents each or four for a dollar" is sure to drive away customers. A customer may not do the arithmetic the first time he visits the store, but eventually he will note that the retailer is misusing a standard marketing device by charging the same amount for volume purchases rather than offering customers a small discount to encourage such purchases.

Similarly, the parking garage that advertises in big letters “75 cents for the first hour” and then charges 75 cents for each additional ten minutes is attempting to mislead its customers. You may park in such a place once, when you are late for an appointment and don’t have time to read the fine print on the sign carefully. But you are almost certain to go someplace else next time, even if it means parking a few blocks farther from your destination.

Confusing and misleading incremental prices aren’t the only way a business can abuse its customers’ trust, of course. There are many ways to list prices in a misleading way. For example, how do you feel about a rug cleaner who offers to clean “five rooms for \$89” and then, in small print, defines a room as being 6’ by 8’? Although this might appear to border on the dishonest, it is actually a typical practice in the rug cleaning business. Rug cleaners who avoid this type of pricing, however, are appreciated by their customers. For example, a friend recently told us about a service that prided itself on cleaning any rug, regardless of size, for a fixed price, and doing up to three throw rugs free as part of every job. We plan to try that business next time we clean our rugs and, if it is as good as claimed, will surely tell others.

To be clear, a price should also be easily discernible by all potential customers. This is particularly important for service businesses, which don’t have a tangible product to which a price can easily be attached. Many potential customers shy away from some businesses simply because they don’t know what the service costs and for one reason or another feel shy about asking. So, whether you run a typing service or a commercial fishing boat or are a child care provider, tell customers clearly how much your service costs before they have to ask. For example, a typist might do this with a fact sheet listing prices of \$3 per page or \$30 per hour, with a 20% surcharge for rush work that must be done after 5 p.m., a 50% surcharge for rush jobs typed after midnight, and \$1 extra per page for statistics and address lists.

If you doubt that communicating prices can be a big part of any marketing plan, think about how many times you have shied away from patronizing a particular business or service because you didn't know how much it charged and feared the worst. Enough said, we hope.

Don't be afraid to be redundant. No one gets angry at a lawyer who finds three ways to tell you her hourly (and incremental) rates for consultation, research, and court time, but everyone dislikes getting an unexpectedly large bill after services are rendered. For instance, many people in the home contracting business don't inform their clients of their overhead and profit billing. A naive client assumes the contractor works as a salaried person instead of growing a business as in other fields. Naturally the customer goes ballistic when they see 20% or more "tacked" onto their bill.

Chapter 10 discusses in detail the issues of customer recourse and warranties (also part of any description of price). People often want to know if they will get their money back if they are not satisfied, and under what conditions deposits, partial payments, and full payments are refundable.

Complete Prices

The completeness of a price is determined both by the norms of a particular business and by general honest business principles. Ideally, your price for a particular good or service should include everything that a person would expect to pay for, and a little bit more.

Examples of incompleteness in pricing that annoy customers are:

- computers priced without keyboards or software
- hotel room prices for rooms without private baths
- legal fees for incorporating a business that don't include state registration fees
- "fixed-price" meals that don't include coffee
- expensive flowers that don't include greens

- a high-priced suit that doesn't come with free alterations.

Surely you can think of similar examples in your field. Also, pay particular attention to the fact that customary pricing practices in some businesses do not give customers a very good deal. In this situation, a business can quickly build customer trust by offering a little extra. For example, in most communities, it is customary for a used car dealer to sell cars “as is,” with the expectation that they are probably in such rotten condition that they will expire ten minutes after a purchaser takes title. By contrast, a used car dealer that offers a real 90-day warranty violates this custom in a positive, business-building way.

Similarly, the norm in American hotels and motels is a bathroom supplied with soap, towels, washcloth, shampoo, conditioner, shower cap, water glass, and toilet paper. To this, many establishments have added fax services, modem plugs for portable computers, body lotion, bathrobes, slippers, shoe cleaning supplies, disposable toothbrushes, free newspapers, coffee, and orange juice as part of the room price. Speaking of hotels and pricing, there is nothing more annoying than a confusing phone policy. You have probably stayed (most likely only once) at an establishment that charged an exorbitant rate for calls, and as you were checking out it presented you with an extra \$10 or \$15 charge for those few calls you made back home.

If you are a regular traveler, chances are you will return to establishments that offer extra amenities. In one little neighborhood restaurant in Kyoto, Japan, customers who sit down alone are given the latest edition of the daily newspaper after the food order is taken. The restaurant rarely has an empty seat.

To take an example of how something extra can make a big difference, consider how the Japanese auto companies successfully captured a large part of the U.S. auto market. They established a reputation for good value, at least partially because they priced cars to include most of the optional features that purchasers of American cars customarily paid extra for, such as a radio or outside rear view mirror. By contrast, pricing in the U.S. auto industry is so confusing that *Consumer Reports*

magazine, which rates products, has had to develop an almost impossibly complicated formula to compare prices, and even sells computer print-outs to help readers determine what they are paying for.

In some industries, no service at all is the norm—and nowhere is this more evident than in the Internet service provider (ISP) business. Almost everyone has horror stories of the constant busy signal, being put on endless hold, or only being able to access the provider through email whose system always seems to be down. Salli has found an ISP service provided by Sonic.net that not only has a friendly human that answers her phone calls if her computer crashes, but immediately answers questions that are emailed to its technical support staff. You can be sure that Sonic.net benefits from the customer loyalty engendered by these business practices.

A friend rented a car at a New Jersey airport for a few weeks, and when he went to pay his bill there was a large additional charge for a dirty, bottom-of-the-line child's safety seat that could have been purchased retail for half that amount. Nothing had been said about this extra cost when the car, with baby seat, was reserved. Contrast this unpleasant and expensive example with the young couple who moved to Hawaii and had to rent a car for a few weeks before theirs was shipped over. Not only was the car seat free, but when the couple's own car arrived and they returned the rented car, the rental company offered to rent them a baby seat for a few dollars until they could buy their own.

If in your business bidding on a job is the norm, as it is in house painting, consulting, or carpentry, the issue of "completeness" in pricing is a fairly common and often sticky problem. If it is not addressed forthrightly, it can develop into a nightmare of misunderstanding between business and customer and result in the worst kind of word of mouth about the business. Trustworthy businesses in these fields must go out of their way to identify all items included and not included in their price and be sure this information is accurately communicated to customers. And when a customer makes changes to the original bid, a

trustworthy business writes them down accurately along with the extra charge and has the client read and sign the “change orders” so there won’t be any surprises.

This is especially important when dealing with inexperienced clients who may not be familiar with industry norms. You should go out of your way to clarify items that are excluded from a bid, even if such exclusions are standard in your particular business.

For example, a website designer, when quoting a price to build a client’s site, should make it clear from the beginning exactly what the customer is expected to provide, such as graphics, text, or any other features that will be available on the site. In addition, it should be clear to the customer that the price does not include maintaining the site. Similarly, if a house painter customarily charges separate fees for paint and labor, or a building maintenance company expects the building owner to supply cleaning equipment and supplies, the business should say so from the beginning.

Carefully consider whether everything you do on a job is included in the price you quote. If you identify extras that you charge for separately, ask yourself if there is really a good reason for the additional charge. How much would you lose if you included some or all of the extras in your base price? Next, ask yourself whether charges for extras are really fair. Finally, check whether you adequately communicate your pricing policy to your customers by asking yourself how many of them have ever been confused as to what was and wasn’t included in your price. If even a small number have been, you obviously need to make some changes.

A store that solved an unusual price-completeness problem was Filene’s, a fancy French store in San Francisco known for its expensive, beautiful handbags. A large portion of Filene’s business involved sales to Japanese tourists and businesspeople.

For the first six months Filene’s was open, many Japanese customers were annoyed by the addition of a sales tax to the price of their purchases. In Japan, all quoted prices are in round numbers, with the sales tax

included. Filene's solved the problem by using the Japanese method of prefiguring tax into the final price rather than adding it on, and only had to explain to its non-Japanese customers that the price included sales tax. These customers were delighted, because the total price was less than they thought. Interesting problem. Interesting solution.

Giving Customers Choice About Price

If a customer has to buy too much, too often or in inconvenient units to get a good price, your pricing policies simply do not engender trust. Customers should have as much choice as you can give them over the final price or the amount of goods or services they want to buy.

Good examples of businesses that provide customers with a high level of control over pricing include:

- a car repair garage that phones the customer before installing an unexpectedly high-priced replacement part
- a hardware store that sells nails by weight as well as by the bag
- a laundromat that has washers and dryers in several different sizes so that a customer with a small load doesn't have to pay for a large one
- a printer who tells the customer that preparing a page layout that can be put on a larger press will mean a lower unit cost
- a bike repair shop that takes the time to show customers how to make their own routine repairs
- a natural foods store that gives customers credit for recycling peanut-butter tubs
- a lawyer who encourages people with a self-help bent to do a portion of their own work on routine matters and discounts the fee accordingly
- a picture framing shop that has a facility for customers to do their own framing at a reduced rate.

Your pricing goal should be to give your customers maximum choice of sizes, amounts, hours of time purchased, and so on—consistent, of course, with the sensible operation of your business. For example, if someone asks for plain ice cream rather than the “Strawberry Delight” you have on the menu, you may make a loyal customer if you not only serve the ice cream without the fruit sauce, but also subtract an appropriate amount from the bill.

We are delighted with Sassafras Restaurant in Santa Rosa, California. It’s a spot that offers the “two size” menu—offering much more control over pricing than most restaurants. At Sassafras, patrons have the option of turning a small salad into a full dinner or ordering a half-portion entrée. For example, two chummy diners could order a few two-ounce tasting glasses of wine, small salads, and four “starter-size” entrees—and, by sharing, end up sampling six dishes and several wines.

Another good example of a business that offers flexible pricing is Sonoma Compost in Petaluma, California, which provides premium quality compost and mulches made from recycled organics. It has a very clear written pricing policy and offers a wide variety of mulch. The customer has complete control over the pricing and can order as little as one to as much as 2,000 cubic yards, with generous discounts for the larger amounts. Sonoma Compost is located at the county landfill and “recycle town.” As a bonus to customers who bring in trash or recyclables, Sonoma awards a 50% discount on up to five cubic yards of screened organic compost. This “bring a load ... take a load” offer is very popular.

SONOMA COMPOST PRICE LIST			
SONOMA MULCH		SONOMA COMPOST	
QUANTITY	SCREENED MULCH	QUANTITY	SCREENED COMPOST
1-12 Yds.	\$8.00 Cubic Yard	1-12 Yds.	\$12.00 Cubic Yard
13-24 Yds.	\$7.00 Cubic Yard	13-24 Yds.	\$10.50 Cubic Yard
25-100 Yds.	\$6.00 Cubic Yard	25-100 Yds.	\$ 9.00 Cubic Yard
101-500 Yds.	\$5.00 Cubic Yard	101-500 Yds.	\$ 7.50 Cubic Yard
500 - 2000 Yds.*	\$4.00 Cubic Yard	500 - 2000 Yds.*	\$ 6.00 Cubic Yard
SONOMA EARLY MULCH		SONOMA PATH MULCH	
QUANTITY	YOUNG COMPOST	QUANTITY	RECYCLED WOOD CHIPS
1-12 Yds.	\$5.00 Cubic Yard	1-12 Yds.	\$11.00 Cubic Yard
13-24 Yds.	\$4.50 Cubic Yard	13-24 Yds.	\$10.50 Cubic Yard
25-100 Yds.	\$4.00 Cubic Yard	25-100 Yds.	\$10.00 Cubic Yard
101-500 Yds.	\$3.50 Cubic Yard	101-500 Yds.	\$ 9.50 Cubic Yard
500 - 2000 Yds.*	\$3.00 Cubic Yard	500 - 2000 Yds.*	\$ 9.00 Cubic Yard



The home furnishing store IKEA has among the most complete price tags around—most of which include detailed measurements of the product. IKEA customers have a lot of control over pricing—for example, you can buy one pillow sham or one pillowcase. And IKEA makes a point to explain to customers why its prices are reasonable. For example, a recent catalogue blurb on a low-cost desk offered the following question and answer parry: “Why does the EFFEKTIV desk cost so little? It’s simple math. You buy it unassembled and attach the legs yourself. By dividing the work with you, we lower our costs and, of course, the price. A flat package also means we can transport more at once, which reduces the cost of each desk again. And, of course, you can in many cases transport the furniture easily and enjoy it right away.”

A Different Pricing Mechanism: Online Auctions

The Internet has provided the opportunity for individuals to be sellers in a large market, particularly with the growth of online auctions. In the last few years, auction sites have become enormously popular as garage sales and flea markets have migrated online. Besides allowing sellers and buyers to bargain over prices, selling items by auction also offers entertainment value. Case in point is eBay, a lively online auction that has succeeded in large part because it has figured out how to form an online community.

For small businesses, auctions can also be an opportunity to obtain publicity for their products and services. By auctioning off a few examples of their product or service online, the business can not only generate sales but also gain exposure. This strategy is not new; it has been common since the mid-1970s for businesses to donate products and services to be auctioned at charitable events. Such price-entertainment activity can be useful publicity.

Bad examples of pricing situations in which the customer is treated with little respect include:

- lunchmeat packaged only in large amounts
- undertakers who promote super-fancy, overpriced caskets and keep the reasonably priced ones out of sight, and when asked for the “plain pine box” wrinkle up their noses and attempt to make customers feel cheap and uncaring
- service businesses and professionals who bill a half-hour for a five-minute phone call without making this incremental billing policy clear to clients before the fact
- appliance repair businesses that charge an arm and a leg to come and check out a problem, even though you have already accurately diagnosed it
- a car rental company that, instead of prorating by the hour, charges for an extra day when you keep a car an hour or two too long.

Internet Pricing

If you're in the business of selling information, particularly over the Internet, your pricing strategy needs an additional consideration. Perhaps the biggest impact of the electronic revolution on media businesses is the fact that information can now be efficiently packaged and delivered to customers in entirely new ways. One of the most popular developments has been to deliver smaller packages of information, such as individual articles from *The New York Times* or single tracks from popular CDs from iTunes or Zune. Besides developing a system for distributing small information packages (many ingenious systems continue to be introduced by pioneering online businesses), you'll need to figure out how much to charge for them, and how to collect payments efficiently.

One example of an information package tailored to the Internet infrastructure is found at Nolo's website, www.nolo.com. Nolo offers

downloadable eForms that address a particular need such as buying a car or executing a promissory note. For example, one form allows the user to appoint a temporary guardian for their minor child who's traveling abroad with someone other than the parent. The customer provides the information online, and the document is instantly generated and available to download, all for a price much lower than buying a whole book. [Nolo](#) also sells downloadable eGuides that contain focused information about specific legal problems for users who simply want to answer a particular question, rather than buy a whole book. Like Nolo's eForms, the eGuides are considerably less expensive than books.

Evaluating Your Pricing Policy

YES NO

- ☐ ☐ Some customers complain about prices.
- ☐ ☐ Some of the trivial but necessary things I offer with my basic product or service (for example, keys, base stands, containers, refills, and so on) are priced at an amount that is more than people expect.
- ☐ ☐ My product or service is offered in enough different measures that by and large my customers can buy what they need.
- ☐ ☐ My product(s) can be bought in more than one unit of measure (bunches, pounds, bags, lugs, liters, cartons, gross, boxes).
- ☐ ☐ My services can be bought in time increments convenient to my customers (days, half-days, hours, minutes, and so on).
- ☐ ☐ My pricing practices are written down on: (flyer, price sheet, website, the wall).
- ☐ ☐ Any exceptions from my standard pricing practices are well explained (for example, senior citizen discounts are stated on a sign with large type).

I estimate that approximately ____% of my customers pay for more of my product or service than they really need or want, because:

I estimate that approximately ____% don't buy all of my product or service that they really need because:

My volume discounts are:

My volume discounts are available to:

How You Treat the People Around You

Tracking Reputations via the Grapevine.....	82
How Employees Spread the Word.....	84
Common Employee Complaints.....	88
Unequal Treatment.....	88
Arbitrariness of Management.....	88
Exploitation.....	90
Handling Employee Complaints.....	91
Finding Out What Employees Are Thinking.....	93
Suppliers	97
Business Friends and Acquaintances	102
Individuals Who Spread Negative Word of Mouth	
About Your Business.....	106
Your Behavior in Public	108

The way you treat employees, suppliers, and friends is an important element in gaining and keeping the trust of your customers. In fact, it is not an exaggeration to say that positive relations with all of them are one of the invisible foundations of any successful business. Why? Because how you relate to these people is routinely communicated to your customers and potential customers.

Tracking Reputations via the Grapevine

Assume you live in Kansas City, Missouri, and a friend tells you about Joe Green, a skilled bootmaker, who specializes in just the type of custom-made boots you want. Aside from Joe's name and occupation, you know nothing about him. A few days later, when you decide to call Joe, you find you can't get his number from your friend because she's left on an extended vacation.

You consider giving up the hunt, but then, looking at your old battered boots, you wonder if you can find Joe yourself. But no Joe Green is listed in the phone book. You decide to persevere and ask friends and acquaintances if they know Joe. No luck. Your next step is to ask them to check with their friends who might know him. Believe it or not, at this point there is an excellent statistical chance that you will locate Joe. One of your friends is quite likely to have a friend who either knows Joe or knows someone who does.

Think of it this way. If you have 400 friends and acquaintances (although this sounds like a lot, if you include old school chums, business associates, and casual social acquaintances, you probably know lots more than that), and each of them also has 400, you have an immediate friendship network of 160,000 people. (There will probably be some overlap between your friends and your friends' friends, but just the same, the numbers are impressive.) These 160,000 friends of your friends are linked in the same way to 64 million people, or about one-third of the adult population in the United States.

You can try a similar experiment yourself. Randomly pick the name of any businessperson in the yellow pages of another city. Next, ask any friends who live or do business in that city if they know anyone in that or a related business. If they do, call that person and ask about the person whose name you picked. Chances are that if they don't know the person you are looking for, they can refer you to someone who does. If there is either very good or very bad news about this person's business, you're even more likely to find him.

The point of these exercises is not to teach you to run your own detective agency, but to illustrate that even in our large and complex society, we are still amazingly connected to each other, especially when we run a business that affects the lives of other people. It follows that it doesn't take long for an interested party to learn a lot about us from those we deal with regularly. If you mistreat your employees or suppliers, they'll spread the bad news. Similarly, if you go out of your way to treat these people well, the good word spreads. Sometimes this interconnectedness is hard to believe, because just about all small business owners feel pretty isolated at times. And it's true that the word about your business (good or bad) may be dormant for a while, but when someone does inquire about your business reputation, it will wake up and promptly continue its journey from person to person.

Salli was at the local Hospice Thrift Store one rainy afternoon, and the popular store was filled with shoppers. A young woman lugged a vacuum to the checkout stand and the person next to her commented, "You don't want that vacuum." She preceded to tell a horror story of her motor conking out in the same model after only two months of use, and that when she read the small print in the warranty, it excluded the motor. Other customers starting putting in their two cents' worth, and at the end of ten minutes the thrift store put the vacuum in the trash out back.

James, a well-known author, had worked on a book for over six years and in the process interviewed several hundred people. A publisher was mentioned to him by several people as being "just perfect" for this book.

Having published many books in the past, he could pretty much choose his publisher but decided to give this one a try. Imagine his dismay when his manuscript was returned after three days with the most perfunctory two-sentence rejection form letter. The pages of his manuscript appeared to have been untouched, and they forgot to take out his cover letter. Needless to say an outraged James has told everyone this story, including other authors.

How often have you been asked if another business pays its bills to suppliers on time? We know dozens of smaller companies that are reported to have poor employment practices, slow or erratic payments to suppliers, and bad records when it comes to dealing with independent contractors. These poor business practices are not an infrequent conversation topic among businesspeople at trade fairs, coffee shops, or over lunch, and for good reason: Most small business owners can't afford to deal with people who don't pay their bills on time or who otherwise treat them badly.

How Employees Spread the Word

One of the easiest ways for anyone to learn about how you run your business is by talking to your employees. Because your employees' lives are so intertwined with yours, and because you affect them so directly, your treatment of them will almost automatically be communicated to their friends and family, even if inadvertently. And remember, because your employees spend more time with you than anyone outside of their immediate family, they know about you and your business in a way few others ever can.

How you run your business may be reported indirectly when employees make such statements as:

- “I’m exhausted; the inventory is such a mess that I had to work late last night.”
- “I don’t know when I’ll get a vacation; no one has made an entry in the general ledger in three months.”
- “Don’t phone this week; everyone’s nerves are on edge. Two people quit a few weeks ago, and we are trying to do their work as well as our own, and it looks like the boss isn’t going to replace them.”
- “The boss poor-mouths all the time, but he’s always getting twenties out of the cash box.”
- “I have to hold my paycheck for a day because there isn’t enough money in the bank to cover it.”

If you have any doubt about how fast word of your treatment of employees is passed along, consider these examples:

- TWA was one of the first major airlines to hire black pilots. Years after other airlines had also broken the color barrier, many black Americans still went out of their way to patronize TWA.
- Whole Foods operates with a wide-open financial system. Sensitive figures on store sales, team sales, profit margins, even salaries are available to employees in every location. The company shares so much information so widely that the SEC has designated all 6,500 employees “insiders” for stock-trading purposes.

To return to our Coors beer example from Chapter 1, in an amazing series of public statements, the Golden, Colorado, company so alienated many of its Chicano employees that their union led a boycott against the company.

Family Members Spread the Word, Too

A *Washington Post* story about kids embarrassing their well-known relatives hit the Internet like a meteorite. One of the kids, Jared Watts, wrote despairingly about his job at a Cingular wireless store on his blog, complaining that the company policies were “abusive to the customer,” “inappropriate,” and “violated [his] personal beliefs.” Watts’s father is Wayne Watts, senior vice president and associate general counsel of AT&T Corp., the parent company of Cingular.

Syndicated business columnist Milton Moskowitz, along with co-authors Robert Levering and Michael Katz, responded to the concern so many Americans feel about the quality of the companies they work for by writing a best-selling book. In *The 100 Best Companies to Work For in America* (Doubleday, 1993), the authors describe the practices of 100 American companies in detail. Working conditions, pay, benefits, firing and promotions policies, and all sorts of other information of importance to employees are discussed.

How did the authors get all their “inside” information? While the task was time-consuming, it wasn’t as difficult as it might seem. The reputations of businesses, even those with only a few hundred employees such as Celestial Seasonings and Odetics (both of which were included in the 100 best list), are really quite well known.

Not only do employees know a lot about their own employers, they know a great deal about the employment practices of others in their line of business. For example, Moskowitz, Levering, and Katz learned that companies with outstanding reputations in promoting blacks (Cummings Engine, Levi Strauss, and Polaroid) and women (Hallmark Cards, Federal Express, and Nordstrom) were widely known and respected for their practices. The same was true for companies with policies that encouraged employees to study for advanced degrees (Bell

Labs), companies where retirement policies are outstanding (Johnson Wax), and even companies that have great parties (Advanced Micro Devices) or employee gardens (Control Data).

Miller Brewing offers a huge complimentary bar for its employees called Fred's Pub, named for Frederick Miller the company's founder. The pub serves 13 varieties of bottled brew and seven on tap and the tab is always paid. For employees it's an appreciated perk, at the same time reminding employees why customers like Miller's.

In a small business, the payment of wages and benefits takes on particular importance. Employees need to feel they are being treated fairly. An open-book policy in which everyone knows what everyone else makes, from the boss to the teenaged delivery boy, is an excellent idea, especially when the business genuinely tries to pay people fairly. (See the discussion of "openness" in Chapter 6.)

We all know of companies (big and small) where most of the employees scrape by on minimum wage while the owner keeps the amount of his own pay and benefits a secret, plays golf twice a week during business hours, and drives a Mercedes to work. This kind of behavior almost always results in low employee morale and gives pause to customers. Customers will consciously or unconsciously ask themselves whether the fact that the employees are treated unfairly means that when push comes to shove, their concerns will also be held hostage to the owner's needs. On a more positive note, we know of more than one small business owner who regularly checks on wages paid by similar businesses in their community and then pays at least slightly more, even if they have to cut their own income to do it. They reason correctly that their employees will be proud of the fact that they are valued highly and as a result will not only work harder but spread the good word.

Common Employee Complaints

The most common areas of employee complaint are unequal treatment, arbitrariness of management, and exploitation. Let's examine the causes of each of these briefly and look at some suggestions that should help avoid, or at least ameliorate, problems.

Unequal Treatment

An unequal treatment complaint is a synonym for any differences in pay, work rules, expense accounts, job opportunities, and perks that an employee doesn't understand or accept. The best medicine to both cure and prevent the recurrence of this nasty infection of your workplace is to embrace a system of open books and an open management style, complete with well-defined personnel policies and frequent performance reviews. And keep in mind that, legally, company policies on vacation, sick leave, promotions, and other important matters must be applied in a nondiscriminatory manner.

Arbitrariness of Management

A complaint that management is arbitrary stems from much the same problems, but also usually signals that important business policies are being developed in secrecy, so that employees don't know what the business is doing and why.

One good example is a public relations firm whose top management decided to drop one client, whom their financial records showed was unprofitable, and put extra energy into another one that was more profitable. Unfortunately, the information was secret and the decision was never explained to the rest of the staff. The company dropped by the P.R. firm was in the recreation business and was respected by the staff for a number of good policies, while the one that got the extra attention was in a business that several employees of the P.R. firm didn't respect.

Because the reasons for the decision were never explained or discussed, several employees quit.

An open management style, involving employees in decision making to the maximum extent possible, is the best way to prevent this sort of complaint from developing in the first place and curing it if it does (see Chapter 6).

Job Applicants Deserve Good Treatment, Too

Don't forget to extend good practices to your hiring process. Unfortunately, when it comes to interviewing prospective employees, many companies don't pay much attention to people's feelings. They forget that each applicant will learn enough about their business to form an opinion and spread it. Pay attention to this in light of its effects on personal recommendations. For example, one small electronics manufacturing company we know gives a nice sample as a gift to everyone applying for a job. This helps cushion the fact that, inevitably, a majority of those interviewed are not offered a job. Another very effective approach is used by a printer we know, who shows job applicants examples of his mono-typeset work and then gives them a gift of a hand-pulled page done by a famous typographer. Other creative businesspeople develop similar techniques to be sure the people they consider for a job have a good interview experience.

These gestures make a great deal of sense for two reasons. First, they acquaint others in a personal way with your business and let them know you care about people. Second, a large proportion of the people interviewed may find work in your field, and you are very likely to have to deal with them in the future.

Use the same concerned approach with occasional and part-time workers, freelancers, and others who come into contact with your business on an occasional basis.

Exploitation

In the small business world, complaints that management is exploitive usually point to an atmosphere in which financial data is kept secret and there is a perception that some employees (often the owners) get a disproportionate share of the financial returns. This sort of complaint also commonly occurs when employees observe customers and suppliers complaining about the treatment they receive from management with no apparent redress or explanation from the company. You'll often hear this kind of complaint in businesses where it is routine to use highly competitive language like:

- “No matter what else you do, you have to win.”
- “A lot of people are out to screw you; the only way to handle that is to screw them first.”
- “As long as the bottom line is healthy, there is nothing to worry about.”
- “What they don't know won't hurt them.”
- “If we didn't do it, someone else would.”

Again, the best methods of prevention and cure for employee feelings of exploitation include a commitment to open financial records and an effort to compensate employees fairly.

One company that successfully follows these practices operates a resort/conference facility near Tucson, Arizona. When it began, the company took over and remodeled an old and respected hotel. The existing staff was initially careless and did not respond to the new management group. Finally, the resort manager, with the approval of the owners, posted the monthly financial report in the kitchen area, where employees could see it. Not one employee asked any questions for almost two months. Finally, at a newly organized bimonthly staff meeting, one of the oldest workers asked why the figures showed the business was losing money and expressed concern that the business could not survive the coming months. The key financial issues were discussed,

and the concerns of management that sloppy staff performance was contributing to the problem were aired and fully understood by every employee. Morale changed overnight. Worker productivity improved so much it amazed even the workers themselves. The outcome was visible in the quality of upkeep of the grounds, in the dining room service, and particularly in the behavior of the front desk staff. Before long, the figures posted on the kitchen wall showed a healthy profit.



RESOURCE

The Employer's Legal Handbook, by Fred Steingold (Nolo), explains your legal responsibilities as an employer, including your duty to treat employees in a fair, nondiscriminatory manner.

Handling Employee Complaints

How you handle employee complaints is central to how your business is viewed by employees and ultimately the public, which hears about how you treat your workers. Creating a positive way to encourage and deal with complaints is a sign to your employees that you care about them and that they are appreciated. Again, the idea is simple: If employees truly feel that their concerns are taken seriously, they will walk an extra mile (or maybe even ten) for your business, because they will regard it as their business, too.

Perhaps the best example of the value of a procedure for handling employee complaints is a company with one of the worst records: the United States Postal Service (USPS), a semiprivate organization that was partially separated from the U.S. government in the late 1960s. Because the USPS was originally a government bureaucracy it retained a rigid structure that was inappropriate for the type of employee relations that prevail in the commercial market. The consequence became evident in

the late 1980s and well into the 1990s when several USPS employees killed their supervisors and other employees in the workplace. The American public became greatly alarmed as the horrors of workplace homicide spread to other industries. During this time, the phrase “going postal” was commonly used to mean workplace homicide. TV comedians suggested that when a flag flew at half mast over a post office this was a sign that it was hiring new personnel.

All of this changed when the USPS introduced employee mediation services in the late 1990s. Throughout the United States, in hundreds of cases per week, postal employees are offered free mediation services, with paid time off to mediate all disputes and disagreements with managers, supervisors, and fellow employees. The consequences have been very positive and as the success becomes recognized, similar commercial enterprises have copied the Postal Service.

In most small businesses, there is an informal complaint structure. An employee who doesn't like something tells the boss or a supervisor face to face. This process is generally workable as long as the problems are minor and the business small. However, when a business employs more than five or six people, a formal process, including personnel reviews, makes it easier to deal with a wide array of problems that are not so minor.

Even in very small businesses, a formal employee grievance process should be written, posted, and given to each employee to sign. The grievance procedure should specify where and how to complain about all types of potential problems. It should discuss in detail how the complaint will be investigated and, if necessary, be formally considered and resolved. Finally, a tight procedure to keep complaints confidential is obviously a crucial part of any formal complaint procedure. In the best circumstances, an employee complaint process should also include an appeals process for serious matters where management's judgment may warrant a second opinion.

If you don't have a good grievance procedure, an employee who feels there is no internal structure to deal with a problem about termination,

demotion, or salary may seek help outside the business. This can often mean either that employees will sue you, or try to organize a union. For example, we know a small wholesale business which recently—unilaterally and without consultation—changed a series of employee rights and benefits. In the view of management, the benefits conferred on the employees by the change were much greater than what the employees lost in perks. So when the employees turned to the Teamsters Union, management was initially both flabbergasted and angry. It never occurred to them that the employees, suddenly facing a whole new set of work rules, some of which they thought were very unfair (for example, loss of pay for lunch hour), went outside the company for help because there was no fair grievance and appeal procedure or, for that matter, any process that allowed them to communicate their position to management.

**TIP**

Use software to collect suggestions. Software is available that offers employees another way to submit suggestions and complaints to management. These sorts of systems also facilitate “whistle blowing” and encourage workers to report bad managers, fraud, theft, and safety issues.

Finding Out What Employees Are Thinking

One good way to find out what your employees think about you and the practice of your business is to ask. If you have only a few employees, you may want to talk to each individually or have a series of meetings, taking care to establish an environment of trust so that your employees will feel confident in saying negative as well as positive things.

If your business is larger, you may want to rely, at least to some extent, on a written questionnaire. Following is a sample grievance procedure and questionnaire that you can adapt to your needs. Give the questionnaire to employees, and allow anonymous responses.

Sample Employee Grievance Procedure

Here is material excerpted from the formal grievance procedure of a 20-person software development company. It isn't a complete grievance plan, but it illustrates some of the issues that should be covered.

Grievances concerning personnel reviews: The person with a grievance is to write a letter to the chair of the grievance committee requesting a hearing time and date. The chair will hear the matter, put comments in writing for the employee personnel file, and take whatever actions are necessary in the matter. No further appeals are provided. If the chair of the grievance committee is a direct supervisor of a party involved, the letter shall be sent to a company lawyer who is the alternative chairperson.

Grievances concerning salary, benefits, or office working conditions: Same as above, except that the grievance committee chair shall include in the deliberations the company president and another employee chosen by the person filing the grievance. There is no appeal for final decisions of this group.

Grievances concerning ethical behavior of employees or management concerning termination of employment, matters of illegality, public issues, discrimination: The procedures shall be the same as above, except that the full grievance committee shall be called. The person filing the grievance letter can specify individuals to be excluded from the committee where their presence would directly bear on the grievance matter. Appeal on the decision of the committee can be filed with the chairperson of the board within two weeks of the final decision of the grievance committee, and the board shall as a whole make a final decision at its earliest convenience.

All personnel involved in the grievance process are expected to maintain confidentiality when requested.

Employee Questionnaire

	Poor	Adequate	Excellent
The working conditions here are generally ...	☐	☐	☐
The working conditions, compared to other jobs I've had are ...	☐	☐	☐
Handling of serious employee problems that are brought to managers is ...	☐	☐	☐
When most employees describe the business management they say ...	☐	☐	☐
I know the established policy for handling employee problems and grievances.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE ISN'T ONE	It is ...	☐	☐
I know the established policy for handling employee wage disputes.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE ISN'T ONE	It is ...	☐	☐
I know the established policy for handling conflicts between employees.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE ISN'T ONE	It is ...	☐	☐
When someone is fired most fellow workers know the circumstances in which the employee can appeal the decision within the company.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE AREN'T ANY	The appeal process is ...	☐	☐

Employee Questionnaire (cont'd)

Yes No

I am paid fairly.



I know what others are paid.

☐ ☐

Most employees know their jobs.

☐ ☐

Most employees understand the direction, policies, and goals of the business.

□ □

Comments and suggestions for improving working conditions:

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Suppliers

It has long been remarked that the tallest buildings in a society reflect its central concerns. Only a century ago, church spires defined the skyline. They were replaced by the buildings of major industrial concerns. Today, bank buildings, insurance companies, and office towers filled with investment companies and law firms dominate the rest. A focus of all these businesses is credit and creditworthiness.

As a nation we have been taught to trust the integrity of these giant financial enterprises because of their track records. However, some of these institutions, such as savings and loans, Enron, Global Crossings, and WorldCom, have proved themselves unworthy of trust. A number of huge but financially troubled banks have been sold to other huge banks to avoid failure. It may not be too soon to wonder what institutions will replace the banks on the top floor of urban America.

When it comes to small businesses, people are judged more on how they treat their creditors than on how big their headquarters is. Having a good record in paying bills is insurance against negative stories being circulated about your small business. Having an extra-good record can be a positive marketing tool that can work to improve your business when the people you deal with spread the positive word, as they inevitably will.

Every business has suppliers. They vary greatly depending on the business, but almost everyone must deal with lawyers, accountants, bankers, maintenance people, office supply stores, and a variety of neighborhood businesses. Those of you in retail, wholesale, or restaurant businesses must relate to many more.

From the marketing vantage point, suppliers can be seen as similar to family members who share the same house. Your actions have immediate and important effects on each other. When at home a child leaves the cap off the toothpaste, the next person must deal with the dried-up glob on the end of the tube. Similarly, your failure to pay a printing bill on

time means your printer may have to deal with the nasty mess of not having enough money to pay his bills.

Both at home and in the business community, how you handle problems is quickly noticed by others. At home, if you yell and scream and make the erring child feel miserable, chances are she will act out her resentment in some way. The same is true when problems develop in business. If you make little or no effort to view problems from your suppliers' point of view, you have no right to be surprised if your relationships with them deteriorate. The surprising thing is that people so often ignore their suppliers' needs—in spite of the fact that even a modest effort to communicate about your business difficulty will go a long way toward solving it.

The worst mistake a small business owner or manager can make is to ignore the fact that many of their primary business concerns are, at bottom, the same as those of the businesses they deal with. This is particularly true when it comes to taking in enough money to meet payroll on time, pay off bank loans, and generally fulfill financial obligations. Far too often, small businesspeople become so manic about making their accounts balance at the end of the month that they forget that their suppliers have the same needs, that their accounts payable are someone else's accounts receivable.

Think of it this way: When it comes to economic survival, businesses, especially small ones, are like links in a fence. If one business doesn't fulfill its obligations, the fence is weakened. If a large number don't, the fence collapses. For this reason, every small business owner knows which accounts pay promptly, carefully, and considerately. Surely, in your business, even small accounts take on disproportionate prominence if they pay you slowly and always make excuses. By the same token, you can safely assume that, though you may be only a small account to someone else, they know very well how you treat them. The criteria they use in judging you are the same ones you use: how promptly you pay, and how honest and forthcoming you are in explaining the reasons for any delays.

How does all of this directly affect marketing? Let's consider the book business. Small publishers, of which there are literally tens of thousands, often pay the printer late. Part of the reason for this is that many of these publishers depend on sales from the first few thousand copies of a new title to pay the printing bill. Given this somewhat marginal financing scheme, it is not surprising that printers who deal with small publishers routinely keep tabs on how each is doing. They constantly tune into the book business grapevine to check on who is keeping up on their accounts payable and, more important, who isn't. It's amazing how quickly word gets around when someone begins to slip up. The reason that this word-of-mouth system works so well is that all sorts of people (bookstores, wholesalers, graphic artists, freelance editors, and dozens of others) in addition to printers absolutely need to know that they are dealing with a solvent publishing house, and take the time to find out.

When even a modest amount of negative information about a particular publisher is spread, the results can be disastrous to that business. Part of the reason for this is that books (unlike most types of merchandise) are typically returnable by a bookstore to the publisher for at least a year after purchase—but obviously not if a publisher declares bankruptcy. If a bookstore or, worse, a large chain of stores learns that a particular publisher is way behind in its bills, they are likely to make a special effort to quickly return all of that company's overstock, hoping there is still time to be reimbursed.

This sort of loss of trust can quickly snowball; we've seen it sink several publishing companies that might otherwise have been able to cope with their short-term financial problems. For example, the computer book field went from boom to bust between 1982 and 1984. Several small publishers failed and others teetered on the brink of insolvency as nervous bookstores quickly returned perfectly salable books to companies rumored to be in trouble. The bookstores sensibly feared that if they delayed and the books didn't sell, the publisher would be out of business.

Two revolutions have occurred in the book business that reflect the way that commerce and technology have responded to these supplier

trust problems. The first was implemented by the pioneer of online book sales, Amazon.com, which established a fully automated online publisher accounting system. The system orders a small number of books to be kept in Amazon warehouses, and automatically reorders by email as books sell. The system pays automatically every 60 days, and the publisher can track the entire accounting online. The second innovation has been publishing-on-demand. Publishing-on-demand uses computer printing technology to print one book at a time. The publisher pays the printer for the set-up costs for a book, and then orders any number of books as the books sell. This has fit in perfectly for the niche markets of small publishers with small-market books. Both of these revolutions occurred in response to the problems of supplier trust and credit.

Of course, most businesses face a cash flow problem at one time or another, and suppliers help finance these periods. There is nothing wrong with this as long as all concerned are honest and open with each other. Accordingly, whenever we give advice to small businesses with cash flow problems, we urge them to immediately notify their suppliers, by phone, about the problem, explain their plan to solve it, and ask for permission to delay or modify payments. We have never seen a reasonable request along these lines refused. Often, this sort of interaction actually improves relationships. We know of several instances in which the positive communications that developed during a crisis resulted in suppliers helping their customers finance their expansion once the crisis was past. In one instance, after the Japanese economy declined for five years in the early 1990s, an American company that sold prefab houses to the Japanese was encouraged by the cooperative Japanese distributor to shift the business in several directions, all of which resulted in new and rapid expansion when the Japanese economy picked up in 1996. In other instances, suppliers who were kept in the picture liked what they learned and actually invested in the business.

If you want to know how your suppliers feel about you, why not ask? Here is a questionnaire you may want to give to several of them.

Questionnaire for Suppliers

I have found in my dealing with _____
NAME OF YOUR BUSINESS

that you and your key employees are generally:

Poor Adequate Excellent

Accessible when I need you ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Reliable in your payments and financial projections ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Polite in your general business dealings ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Reliable in doing what you promise on time ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Able to handle any problems with your product and services satisfactorily ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Careful and neat when it comes to record keeping ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Generally trustworthy in all dealings ...

☐ ☐ ☐

Comments:

Business Friends and Acquaintances

There is a direct connection between a good small-business marketing plan and how your friends think about and understand your business.

A friend is someone who is connected to you by mutual esteem, respect, and affection. Acquaintances are people to whom you have been introduced and are socially free to speak with again by recalling an earlier encounter. This latter group includes, for example, school classmates, fellow employees, members of the same military unit, and people you come into friendly contact with at trade meetings, conventions, and continuing education courses.

Satisfied customers have some of the qualities of friends. In at least one important way they share values with you, since you both view your business with esteem. However, because your relationship is probably limited by a business context, they are in most instances more like acquaintances. Certainly, like acquaintances, they have the right to approach you without a new introduction. They just call up or walk up and say, “You fixed my plumbing a few years ago and did a wonderful job. How’ve you been doing lately?” They even have the right to subject us to bad jokes. “You’re the guy with the shade shop. I’m glad to see you hanging in there.”

All of your friends, family, and acquaintances should be involved in your marketing strategy because they have a predisposition, often a strong one, toward seeing your business prosper. Unfortunately, despite this predisposition, we often hear friends, or even business acquaintances, say something like this: “I don’t really understand what you do or how your business as a public health research (or solar energy, land use waste disposal, and so on) consultant works.” Or, “I know you distribute shoes (or books, candy, tape recorders, or trees), but what that really means is a mystery to me.”

The point should be clear: Friends can be extremely important in your effort to market your product effectively, but only if you give them a reasonable chance to help. How do you do this? By keeping your social network aware of your operation—your joys and disappointments as well as the nuts and bolts of how your business works. Sometimes months go by without talking with our friends about business. In order for friends to recommend us, we have to make the effort to keep them current. It's worth the effort to periodically make a phone call, email, or fax a poem or cartoon you think a friend would enjoy along with an update about any changes in your business. An added benefit is that it helps keep your friendship network healthy. When you email business associates news about your business, be sure to include your friends on the list. Friends will often let you know when you are going in the wrong direction, and will be there to listen and help put your problems in perspective. Just as important, they will know enough to really appreciate your successes and celebrations. And, of course, they will actually help you sell your product or service.

For example, if you are a landscape architect and often lunch with the lawyer in the next office who shares your enthusiasm for soccer, don't forget to make her knowledgeable about the nitty-gritty of what you do, how you get business, how much you charge, and so on. Sooner or later your lawyer friend will find herself in contact with someone who needs some landscaping done—perhaps a business that consults her about zoning problems connected with a new building. When this occurs, you want her to be able to mention your business confidently and knowledgeably. Be sure to tell others that your business benefits from referrals and to show appreciation when they give you one by expressing thanks in person or by sending a note, flowers, a gift certificate, or whatever is appropriate.

Building a Business Through Word of Mouth

Mary has been a professional jeweler for over 30 years and makes unique and high-quality pieces. She works out of her home and, like many artists, she has chosen to keep her business small.

Mary started her business by showing her creations to her friends and family, who loved her work and began buying her pieces. Then Mary began making jewelry for a retail jeweler and slowly built her personal customer base through family and friends. Here's what Mary has to say about her experience:

"I create a unique and very individual product, which makes the experience much different than going to a department store. By taking a lot of time with each customer, I allow for a process of sorting out what the customer really wants. I am always happy to explain where the stones are from, their age, the quality of the gold, and anything about how I fashion a piece. My customers like being such an active part in the process.

"Often, when they wear my jewelry, they receive compliments and are happy to explain a little bit about my work. I have also done limited editions for a few stores, which generated a few good custom clients. The man who supplies my gems commissions me to make jewelry for his clients.

"I cater to customers who like unusual jewelry. I have a number of clients who come to me repeatedly—if not for themselves, then for a special gift (which often generates a new client). I do have a few folks I call on when special gems come my way and they appreciate this.

"I'm surprised when people find me through other people I don't even know. I think when someone wants something different they're willing to search. I don't try for volume but instead focus on quality and on helping the customer to create something special. I do little to stimulate my business in any traditional sense but I do insist on using only the best stones and taking whatever time is necessary to make sure that the client and I have created a piece of jewelry that they can treasure for a lifetime and pass on to future generations."

The opinion your business peers have of you is also very important to your business. Being in contact with people in your field is one of the best ways of learning about new products and innovations that may be directly useful to you. In addition, consulting people in your peer group network is one of the common ways potential customers check out your business as part of deciding whether or not to patronize you. For some businesses (for example, a new pediatrician or chiropractor in town), it may be difficult to create good personal recommendations without a strong friendship and peer group network. For others (say, a drain cleaning service or a butcher shop), the good opinion of friends may not be as crucial as listing the availability of your service in all the right places, but it is still helpful.

Even a dentist, however, can do a great deal to establish a good friendship network in a hurry. One extremely kind and good-hearted dentist we know did just this by following his best instincts. New to a strange town, with few friends and very limited resources, he spent every spare moment visiting old people's homes and fixing the teeth of the indigent residents for free. After a few months, when it was apparent that he was sincere, some of the people who worked at the convalescent homes began to call him for appointments and refer their friends. The local dental society was so proud of his work that established dentists began to refer their overflow. Within a couple of years, our public-spirited friend had enough patients that he was able to buy the old Mercedes he had always coveted. To his credit, however, he still drives it over to one or another of the old people's homes a couple of afternoons a month and fixes teeth for free.

La Blue's Cleaners in Sebastopol, California, has been in business for more than 40 years. In addition to providing pick-up and delivery service to homes and offices, they are known in the community for extending a hand to the temporarily unemployed. If you are out of work, they will custom dry-clean and press one suit or one dress and launder two shirts or blouses at no charge. This information is posted on a sign

inside the store which says, “This is our gift to you so you will look your best at your next job interview.” Customers really appreciate it, and you can be sure that when they are back among the employed, they bring their business to La Blue’s.

Individuals Who Spread Negative Word of Mouth About Your Business

Most of us want to be liked, if not considered perfect or adorable. However, unless you are a very rare person indeed, you probably have at least a person or two buried somewhere in your network of personal relationships who consider you the first cousin to a scorpion. It’s important to have a strategy for dealing with those few misguided souls who have chosen you or your business for their hostility. This is important, of course, because negative word of mouth about a business, especially when someone goes out of his way to spread the bad word, can have truly bad long-term consequences to your business.

Here are two strategies that often work well:

First, emphasize the positive attributes of the person who dislikes you whenever possible. When you emphasize the positive attributes of someone who is hostile to you, you usually decrease the effect of her malice. You also let others know that you are objective about the problems in your relationships. Finally, your efforts to be more than fair will probably get back to the person and may cause her to treat you more fairly in turn.

Second, mediate or arbitrate your differences with this person, if it’s appropriate. Mediation is a process in which arguing parties select someone who helps them reach their own agreement. In arbitration, the parties agree in advance to let someone else make the final decision. Both techniques are good ways to avoid long-term hostility and the negative word of mouth that flows from it. And when a business openly promotes

these alternative dispute resolution techniques in an honest effort to resolve differences without initiating a formal court action, it gains a reputation for honesty and fairness.

Even if the person who dislikes you won't try to resolve a dispute through mediation or arbitration, at least others affected by the dispute will know you have done your best. It takes a thick-skinned individual to resist the pressure of his peers to work things out.

Despite this good advice, many people find it hard to admit some people feel negatively about them. A four-year-old friend, Joshua, has a philosophy that may be helpful in encouraging you to do this exercise. One day Joshua came home from preschool and told his parents about a kid who had called him a series of truly ugly names. The parents, who were themselves somewhat upset, were surprised when Joshua indicated very little concern. When the parents questioned him about his feelings, Joshua replied, "He just needed someone to pick on. He really doesn't know me."

We also like the approach of Virginia Simons, an independent paralegal in Bakersfield, California, who has had a lot of experience dealing with attacks from bar associations. She was sued by a bankruptcy trustee in federal court, charged with practicing law without a license because she had helped customers prepare their own bankruptcy forms. She told each of her customers what was going on and that the suit was being brought in an effort to put her out of business, not because of incompetence on her part. Several of her colleagues, who were also targeted by the local bar, joined forces with Simons. They got their clients to sign petitions on their behalf. They went to bankruptcy court when it was in session and took notes as to any unequal treatment given to nonlawyers representing themselves. Twenty-five people from all over California showed up in court to support them, and they won their case.

Instead of gloating or spreading negative word of mouth about the bar association, they decided to open up the lines of communication with their opponents and convince individual lawyers that many

people couldn't afford them and needed the services of paralegals. They contacted the district attorney and judges in their county and even the lawyers who had sued them. Simons and her colleagues invited one of the lawyers to the local meetings of the California Association of Independent Paralegals. They had him to lunch. They invited him to speak at their meetings. He invited them to speak to a bar association lunch. They told him that if he thought they were doing a bad job that they were open to having him teach them to do better. The district attorney's office is now a member of their advisory committee.

Your Behavior in Public

Two people were sitting behind us on an airplane talking about a client in very negative terms. The conversation was so vitriolic that our ears perked up. When they mentioned the name of the client and the name of their own firm (a national accounting organization), we were shocked. It didn't speak very well of their own company to be so negative about a client in a public place, and some of the mud they were slinging stuck to their company.

A far more blatant example of how important our public behavior can be to our business success occurred during a San Francisco restaurant strike, when a psychotherapist punched a picketer. A prominent newspaper columnist picked up the item. It certainly wasn't good for his word of mouth in the psychotherapy business.

It's often difficult to think of ourselves in a public sense, always being a representative of our business; to know that our language, appearance, and personal dealings shape our customers' attitudes. But it's true, from small town America to the largest city.

A businessperson must always be "on," to a certain extent. For example, if when making copies at the local self-serve copy shop, you lose 50 cents in the coin slot and respond by beating up the offending machine, anyone present who recognizes you will probably view you as a

highly volatile person. (This, of course, is unfortunate, we hasten to add, because kicking a machine that has done you wrong can sometimes feel very good.) In the back of their mind, they may hold this image of you for a long time, and it may shape their future dealings with you.

An Example of Bad Marketing

Salli moved across country into a home that previously housed a doggy with “issues.” She spent hours looking at carpet samples, finally deciding to buy from Abbey carpets because their products were of good quality and available everywhere, and the company stood behind their product. She chose a wool carpet because the synthetic lines were off-gassing and smelled almost worse than the dog smell.

When Salli contacted a nearby supplier, she was told that even though they had a showroom of over 7,000 square feet and did indeed handle the Abbey line they did not sell wool carpets. In fact—the owner informed Salli in a tone clearly reserved for imbeciles—no one would ever have a wool rug in Florida and no, he would not do a special order for her. “No one carries wool here. No one would buy it. Wool is horrible. It doesn’t do well in humidity. And it stinks!” Salli, who is a former sheep rancher, was furious and hung up.

She did, by the way, find a lovely wool carpet at another store 25 miles away and has told many people this story. In a community where new people are always moving in and looking for referrals, this type of negative word of mouth can really hurt a business.



Openness: The Basis of Trust

Financial Openness.....	113
Physical Openness.....	117
Openness in Management	119
Openness With Information	120
Openness With Ideas.....	123

Openness in business is still not a strategy taught in business school. Sadly, the currently prevailing view is that it's best to "play your cards close to your chest" about almost everything from the way a product is made or a service delivered to profits and pay scales and who qualifies for what business perks. This is a serious mistake. Openness builds customer trust, which, as you should know by now, is the prime requisite of any marketing without advertising campaign.

If you doubt that openness leads to trust, consider the public sector. These days we require public officials to report their campaign finances and top officers in publicly held corporations to report their salaries and stock transactions. Similarly, nonprofit organizations that receive tax subsidies must file a public financial statement; and even private corporations that seek to raise funds in the financial markets must publish much of their financial data and supply the Securities and Exchange Commission with even more. In short, openness in financial dealings, also called transparency, is fast becoming a fundamental legal requirement in all sorts of contexts.

Despite this powerful trend, and despite the fact that openness obviously contributes to building customer trust, many small businesspeople still try to hide as much as they can about their financial and operating affairs. This is a miserable policy, especially from a marketing perspective. Nothing destroys trust as fast as an atmosphere of secrecy. On the other hand, a business that is obviously open with its customers is so refreshing that this policy itself stimulates positive recommendations.

Promoting openness in your business counters the public perception that most businesses watch out for their own interests while often ignoring those of their customers. For many years, this tradition found support in our law under the doctrine of *caveat emptor*, or "let the buyer beware." These days, courts and legislatures have shifted much of the responsibility for selling safe products to business, but there is still a

widespread feeling in the business community that if consumers aren't canny enough to watch out for their own interests, they deserve to be taken advantage of.

As a result, customers tend to be wary when dealing with both individual businesses and the business community generally. For example, these days, someone who reads in the newspaper that a local Merchants' Association favors a particular political position is likely to conclude that the position promotes the merchants'—not the public—interest. And although this is not always true, it is an understandable assumption when you consider how many industries, from those making birth control devices and drugs to those making autos and insulation, have at times cynically placed their own interests before those of their customers.

How open is your business? Can people see what you do and how and where you do it? When they are interested, do you explain the technical parts of it they don't understand, or do you jealously guard this information as a "trade secret"? Is your profit-and-loss information generally available to your customers? Do you let your customers know in advance what they can expect of you if there is a problem with your product or service?

An attitude of openness should be built into all of the details of the way you conduct your business: your pricing, your treatment of employees, and your willingness to answer questions about your products and services.

Financial Openness

The few leading-edge businesses that actually post or publish their financial information where their customers can monitor it constantly get surprised and pleased reactions from customers. It's one of those simple, excellent ideas that customers intuitively understand and respond to. It should be standard procedure for all top-notch small businesses.

If you don't know how powerful this technique can be, consider this example from the book *Honest Business* (Pocket Classic, Shambhala Books, 2007):

Howard publishes the finest bicycle repair manual for the 6,000 bicycle repair shops in the United States. He was ready to print his second edition when he ran into several problems. The first was that he had borrowed to the limit of his personal credit to keep his business going, and the second was that the printer still had an outstanding bill from the first edition. Howard had presold some of the new editions at less than \$12, and that was the break-even point by later calculations. What was he to do?

Howard first considered and rejected accepting advertising in the manual. Although it would have bailed him out of his financial problems, it would have been at the expense of credibility among his readers. What he did, instead, was to announce that he had a problem and described it to a group of bicycle product manufacturers at a trade show. They too thought it was a bad idea to take ads. After his announcement, two people came to him and offered to cosign a loan for him.

Small businesspeople are reluctant to open their books for much the same reason many people are timid about appearing in a bathing suit. They don't want people to know that they're in less-than-perfect condition. This sort of shyness is unwarranted, because openness is reassuring regardless of the actual financial condition of the business.

This point is clearly illustrated by Chris Andersen, who runs a construction company in Stockholm, Sweden. Chris prominently posts his financial records on the work shed near his current construction site. When asked at a recent small business conference, "Doesn't your smallness worry your customers?" he answered with a resounding No. "People can see from my balance sheet that I can afford to finish their project," he explained, "and that's what they primarily care about. When they occasionally see that I have underbid a job and am not making

money on it, they rave to their friends about what a great deal they got. And when I make a profit, they always say they are coming back to me for the next job and they expect a lower bid.”

A Few Who Dared

A few tangible examples help illustrate how some companies have invited customer trust through openness.

Sandstrom Products in Port Byron, Illinois, manufactures product finishes. To check out the Sandstrom employee team, potential customers can go to the company’s website at www.sandstromproducts.com/employee.htm. From that page, they can email Sandstrom employees directly or obtain direct telephone numbers.

Another wonderful example of corporate openness and accessibility is evident at Comsonic, a 100% employee-owned engineering manufacturing and service firm specializing in marketing broadband communications technologies, located in Harrisonburg, Virginia. You can check out Comsonic’s website at www.comsonics.com and, while there, get an electronic version flowchart of the company, complete with employees’ phone, fax, and email contacts.

One effective open marketing approach was initiated by a store that opened in the early 1980s in Tokyo called No Brand. No Brand sells a wide range of products and, true to its name, none of them have brand names. We might call it “generic” in English, but it really isn’t, since all products are top-of-the-line quality and the “generic” concept in the United States has generally been marketed as bottom-of-the-line or economy quality. The Japanese stores are very small, 600 square feet, but very efficient. Clothing is of the highest quality, and the materials are all natural: cotton, wool, linen, or silk. The packaged foods are organic, with no additives. Paper and cardboard products are from recycled material. All products come in limited colors: black, brown, beige, tan,

white, or natural. The whole store is designed to give the sense that you can completely trust what you buy. Nothing secret is added, nothing harmful lurks in unknown ingredients, and even the electrical appliances are the most durable ones on the market. This is openness of a unique form. The products themselves cry out, in an organic, simple way, to be trusted.

A fascinating San Diego, California, company with 240 employees, Eurotherm, has a unique explanation for its commitment to openness, which it calls “the rights of ownership.” Eurotherm, which began in the early 1970s and expects to pass \$100 million in annual sales soon, has a five-part openness program:

1. In the center of its main building, which houses a cafeteria and meeting rooms, is the InfoCenter, where each department posts all of its current financial and operating reports.
2. Each employee has an “Owner’s Manual,” which explains how the company works and how to read the InfoCenter reports. Not all employees are, in fact, owners, but most are.
3. Daily at 9 a.m. there are announcements over the public address system about crucial issues of the day and about visitors expected that day.
4. A newsletter keeping everyone abreast of important company news comes with each paycheck.
5. On Fridays, starting precisely at 4 p.m. and ending precisely at 5, is the \$100 Million Club, which anyone can attend (50 to 75 employees come regularly). It’s an informal talk by an outside guest about business, management, the industry, or related subjects.

Physical Openness

One of the most interesting business developments in the United States has been an increased physical openness in the workplace, which has been enthusiastically supported by customers. For instance, small photo developing shops have sprung up where customers can watch the machine that processes their film. It's also reassuring and fun to watch your car via video as it's being repaired. Restaurants and bakeries that have designed their kitchens to be clearly visible to their customers announce that they have nothing to hide. Hospitals invite fathers and other close relatives into the delivery room during childbirth so they can see exactly what is going on.

Can this approach be made to work in your business? Absolutely. Consider the case of Berkeley Fish. Since this small store moved its sushi-making area from the back of the store to the front window, people gather to watch the Japanese delicacy being prepared. Many are so impressed that they come in and purchase some for the first time.

This strategy could be followed with success by all sorts of other retailers, but for the most part, it isn't. Most businesses still prefer to do much of their work in a back room, far from public view. Are we alone in suspecting that this is often for good (or should we say bad) reason?

Whether you run a garage or small radio station or fish hatchery or beauty salon, ask yourself how you can change the physical layout of your business to let your customers better see what you do. The harder this is to do, the more they are sure to appreciate your efforts and the more likely they are to comment favorably about your business to others.

Avoiding Conflict by Being Open With Clients

A very successful landscape contractor/designer in Northern California has found that being open with clients is essential to the success of his business. He describes it like this:

“Often a client approaches me with a design idea he wants a bid on, and a problem can arise when they don’t have enough money to implement their plan. If you can be open with your client and create a good atmosphere, usually you can mutually redesign to reduce costs. One problem is that in the landscape business most of the money a client spends is not visible. The actual plants, for instance, are only a small part of the cost. The bulk of the cost actually goes into planning, overhead, soil reconditioning, irrigation, transporting materials, site preparation, and labor. Because these costs are invisible, the client must have trust in the landscaper or conflicts are likely to develop.

“To develop trust, I try to be absolutely open about everything I do. I put all the specs of the particular job into every contract, and write the contract on a computer. Then I print it out and read the entire four or five pages to my client. While this may sound tedious, I have learned the clearer our understanding, the fewer problems that will arise. Reading aloud with the client makes it easy to discuss any questions they may have and make necessary corrections before work begins. The more precise description we work out, the better. It also gives me a chance to explain all the “hidden” work that must be done for a really excellent job.”

A building contractor we know does all of the above and also adds his profit and overhead on the estimate instead of the usual practice of “hiding” these figures in the bid.

Openness in Management

In addition to building trust, openness has the great advantage of increasing business efficiency. When each employee has to be given detailed instructions and requires careful supervision, a large hierarchy of middle management is inevitable, and so are mistakes. When employees have an overall perspective on the business operation, they can make better decisions where it most counts: at the lowest level of operation.

A wonderful example of this kind of openness is Scandinavian Airlines (SAS). SAS “study circles” were created so that each employee can learn about basic management issues, such as the long-range plans of the company. In the first year’s study circles, there are ten topics covered, with about six hours of tapes and study per topic. Topics range from “A Functional Organization” to “An Introduction to Systems Development.” The second year’s subjects range from “Strategic Development” to “Planning for the Next Generation of Aircraft.”

Even more important than bringing management-level issues directly to each employee, SAS publishes a weekly newspaper that presents and explains current financial information about the company’s operations. In one edition, the financial information was even broken down into subsidiaries such as hotel and catering services that the company operates.

The newsletter includes letters from customers (including complaints) and an open forum for staffers. For instance, in one issue Jan Sorenson complains that a company brochure “is pure nonsense” and Nancy Johnson, in reservations, suggests a better way to handle prepaid tickets.

The paper has very detailed operational information as well. For example, a chart on the back page shows the amount of available seating on various routes for the coming three weeks.

Openness With Information

More and more businesses sell information instead of, or at least in addition to, tangible products. Think about why you go to optometrists, lawyers, stockbrokers, banks, or real estate agents: You need the specialized information only they have access to.

If you're in a business or profession that trades in information, being open about your finances and how you organize your workspace, while important, are clearly not the only elements in your efforts to be open. Your real task is to be open with your customers by giving them the maximum amount of information about what you do. If you trust your customers enough to demystify your precious information, they will feel more comfortable, satisfied, and appreciative of what you're doing for them.

Few people outside the particular profession understand how a dentist, lawyer, or architect evaluates a particular problem. Too often, the professional works like a "black box": The client feeds in a problem and out comes an answer. The client has no real understanding of what a root canal, temporary injunction, or soils test is all about.

To change this situation, a doctor can stock the waiting room with material (written, audio cassette, or, increasingly, computerized) that answers medical questions. A real estate broker's office can hand out information going into detail on all procedures for selling a house. A bank can explain how its policies make its loans or checking accounts a better deal than other banks.

If you find yourself reluctant to give out free information about the details of what you do, you should rethink what you're charging your customers for. Are you afraid that if you give them information they'll realize they don't need you? If so, perhaps openness isn't for you unless you are willing to change some fundamental aspects of how you work. However, if you come out from behind the professional jargon your colleagues hide behind and let your customers in on the maximum

amount of useful information without paying you to interpret it for them, you will find that your work satisfaction will improve, because you are now helping educated participants rather than ignorant skeptics. And, at least as important, your income will go up, too, because your clients will surely tell many others about your refreshingly open and honest business practices.

Here is a questionnaire to help you measure how open your business is. This is important and well worth the time it will take to complete. The authors' years of consulting experience with small business clearly demonstrate that the more boxes marked with an "X" on the right-hand side of the page, the more effective the marketing program. Few "X" marks is a red flag indicating serious problems.

Advice by Email

Michael's offer to do telephone consultation in the first edition of this book now has a new twist, thanks to one of his phone clients, the Center for Traditional Medicine in Cambridge, Massachusetts. When the Center decided to plan a new marketing event, instead of phoning Michael again for advice, it sent a postcard asking three questions and offering multiple choice answers for each. Michael cried "Brilliant!" and instantly added the Postcard Question Service to his repertoire. Soon afterwards, he began offering this service by email.

You can obtain an email Multiple Choice Consultation for just \$10. (Because of the background information required—see the information on telephone consulting in "Help Beyond This Book" in the Appendix—this offer applies only to businesses that consult with Michael on the telephone first.) For information on how this service works, see Michael's website at www.well.com/user/mp/mwa.html. This is also a new form of business accessibility (see Chapter 9).

How Open Is Your Business?

We are willing to discuss the following aspects of our business with:

	Family	Friends	Employees	Accountant	Attorney	Some Customers	All Customers
wages ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
rent ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
cost of goods ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
source of supplies ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
financial problems ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
profits and losses ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
specific techniques ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

I personally will show or explain in detail:

How I do what I do ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How my equipment works ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How I price a product or service ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How I keep track of time ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How I keep track of costs ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

My financial statements are available to anyone who wishes to see them ...

YES	NO
☐	☐

Openness With Ideas

Many businesses deal in what has become known as “intellectual property.” Intellectual property consists of ideas, designs, trade secrets, and practices, as well as patents, copyrights, and trademarks that you own.

Licensing is the main way that ownership of intellectual property is shared. For example, books are licensed to filmmakers, films are licensed to DVD distributors, toy designs are licensed to manufacturers, promotional advertisements are licensed to local TV stations, and inventions are licensed to manufacturers.

Another way that intellectual property can be made available to others, of course, is simply to give it to them. A restaurant can make its recipes available to its customers, a computer programmer can post a program online for public use, and an author can give away his poem.

Many businesses, of course, neither license nor give away their legally protected property but try to monopolize it for their own gain. The world is full of secret formulas, patented inventions, and fiercely defended trademarks. Like other sorts of secrecy in business, most businesspeople never question their monopolistic practices.

They should. A small business that tries to monopolize intellectual property treads a very dangerous course. To illustrate this point, let's look at a big business example of a product that most people are familiar with.

In 1977, RCA developed a video player requiring a specialized video disc. It did not license this product to others and tried to monopolize what it correctly saw as a phenomenal new business. Unfortunately for RCA, Matsushita and Sony developed videotape players that produced similar results (the Beta and VHS systems). Both were licensed to many manufacturers. By 1983, RCA's basically excellent product was so isolated in the marketplace that the company canceled it. A few years later, it was clear that of the two surviving systems, the one that had been

licensed most widely (the VHS system) was scooping up the lion's share of the business.

There are lots of similar examples of companies refusing to license their intellectual property losing out to others who were more open. Audio tape is one, where reel-to-reel and eight-track systems lost out to small cassettes because the Dutch Philips company licensed the systems for making and playing the tapes to virtually anyone interested at a very reasonable rate.

Two Internet businesses offer the best and most recent examples. The Web-browsing boom was virtually created by the founders of Netscape, who gave their Web browser software free to consumers and only charged businesses for the licenses. The Internet server business has been revolutionized by Linux, a free software program that has become a major force in the formerly closed server market dominated by Microsoft. Linux is served by the community of "volunteer" programmers around the world and by commercial businesses that have also grown up to provide service to large corporations.

What is the moral of this for small businesses that develop intellectual property? Simply that those who are most open to including others in what they are doing are far more likely to prosper than those who don't.

Generous Marketing Proves Historic Success

The late Andrew Fluegelman, formerly editor of *PC World* and senior editor of *MacWorld*, prominent computer magazines, authored a program to allow certain types of computers to talk to each other, called PC Talk. Instead of selling this program, Fluegelman gave it away, in the process refining a marketing strategy now known as “freeware.” Those who were given a copy of PC Talk were encouraged to voluntarily send a licensing fee to Fluegelman. If they did, they qualified for free program updates. The result is a computer business legend. With no advertising, Fluegelman’s program became a substantial success, bringing in over \$200,000 in 1984 alone. Indeed, until his untimely death in 1985, Fluegelman’s total revenues from PC Talk exceeded the net return of all directly comparable programs, many of which were marketed with expensive advertising hoopla.

Fluegelman’s program allowed computers to link to networks, which in the early 1980s were new and limited. By 1993, computer networks were beginning to grow, and the Internet had several million active users. Into this environment stepped one of the most astounding marketing achievements in history. Marc Andreessen started distributing, free, a program called Netscape. Netscape was elegantly simple at the outset and allowed good graphics, direct access to files that were made public on the Internet, and easy movement to other distant files. The new environment was quickly called the World Wide Web, and Netscape became the standard.

Netscape charged commercial users for its program and sold its services for internal corporate use. The company sold public shares of stock in early 1995 and created a sensation that played a direct role in lifting the whole domestic American stock market nearly 30% in one year. Then Andreessen’s company achieved another historic first by generating revenues in excess of \$100 million in its first year of existence.

Marketing Without Advertising deserves a tiny amount of credit. The 1986 edition of this book was the first published account of generous marketing, including the RCA, Dutch Philips, and Fluegelman stories.

At this point you may be saying, “Great story, but what’s the point for my small business? I don’t write software, splice genes, or have a pantry full of secret recipes.” While the issue of licensing and the principle of generosity in marketing doesn’t come up often for small businesses, something very similar does commonly occur for all providers of goods (and sometimes, services) under the guise of exclusive marketing agreements and exclusive territory agreements.

We have seen many businesses confronted with a retailer or wholesaler who says, “I’ll carry your product only if I can have an exclusive agreement in this area for selling it.” At first examination, it makes sense: The retailer or wholesaler may make a greater effort to sell it if he or she has an exclusive deal. In reality, the small manufacturer, artist, or craftsperson faces the same situation as do giants like RCA and Philips. The exclusive agreement makes it much harder for your ultimate clients to find and buy your product or service, because it inevitably results in severe restriction of the many ways it can be sold, displayed, and marketed. Indeed, no matter what the incentive, it is almost never worth signing an exclusive agreement of any sort. Sometimes this means making a tough decision to turn down what seems like a very lucrative deal. Do it. Never let short-term greed get in the way of long-term good business practices. ●

Deciding How to Educate Potential Customers

What Does Your Business Do?.....	128
Defining the Domains in Which Your Business Operates.....	136
Providing Information on Businesses in Established Fields	139
Businesses in New or Obscure Fields	143
Marketing With Videos.....	147
Whom to Educate	152

For the most powerful marketing force—positive recommendations—to work, most businesses have a major communication job to do. After all, if people don't know the details of the goods and services you offer, they are unlikely to be effective in recommending your services to their friends. But before you can design an effective marketing plan, you must decide:

- the general kind of information people need to know about your business so that they can tell others about you, and
- what specific groups of people you want to target for your educational efforts so that your marketing plan based on positive recommendations will be maximally effective.

This chapter helps you focus on these issues. Once you've decided them, Chapter 8 deals with the specifics of getting your message across effectively.

Before we get into the details of how to best spread the word about your business, however, we suggest you run a little test as to how accomplished you already are in disseminating information about your business. Ask ten friends and acquaintances—people you live near, or participate in sports with, or know from the PTA or a social club—to give a brief description of your business. How well do they describe what you do? Could they convincingly tell others about what you do? Or do they need more information to really recommend you?

What Does Your Business Do?

Before you can sensibly design a marketing plan based on personal recommendations, you need to articulate a clear, easily understandable statement of what your business is about.

A statement of what your business is may seem so obvious to you as to not bear mentioning. It isn't. After working with many small businesses, we have learned that the business owner who can clearly communicate

what he does is the exception. When many of us are asked what we do, we make statements such as, “What don’t I do?” or “Isn’t it obvious?” or “You know—pretty much what the average small office CPA (financier, vet, and so on) does.” This sort of vagueness usually exists even in seemingly straightforward operations such as bicycle repair or independent grocery store businesses.

Charmian Anderson is a therapist who is excellent at marketing her services. She started her practice in San Francisco with the few clients she acquired while finishing graduate school, but needed more.

Anderson discovered early on that mentioning the fact that she was a therapist with a Jungian bent didn’t generate much business, so she decided to concentrate on describing her business in a way her friends and potential clients could easily understand. To do this, she created and memorized a simple 25-word statement: “I help successful people with executive jobs or their own businesses who have short-term emotional problems such as divorce, family stress, or trauma.” She includes it in her written flyers and other materials and delivers it orally at all sorts of gatherings, including meetings of businesspeople—the kind where you stand up and tell who you are and what you do.

The brevity and clarity of her statement allow Anderson’s friends and supporters to actually find potential clients for her because they have a concrete way to communicate what she does. By contrast, her earlier definition of “I’m a therapist” was virtually useless.

To create a good description of your business, you must thoroughly understand it yourself. Surprisingly, many businesspeople, even those who have worked in a field for a long time, haven’t fully thought out all aspects of their business.

One way to get a better understanding of your business is to develop a clear understanding of the broader domain in which it functions. Let’s take an example. Suppose you manufacture a cooking pot. It would be easy, but only partially correct, to say you are in the business of making cooking pots. To develop a meaningful description of your business—

one that will help you develop a marketing strategy—you must consider the role of the pot in the lives of your customers. The idea is to look at all the possible ways your business touches customers' lives. Pots are for cooking, so any marketing strategy should presumably be based on this fact. The truth is, however, if you assume that your business has to do only with cooking, you will consider only a part of your possible market.

Let's see what happens to your marketing options if you consider these additional facts:

- Your pots are stored somewhere, so you are also part of the “kitchen storage” domain.
- Your pots must be cleaned, so you can add the “cleaning” domain.
- If some cooking methods, such as boiling and steaming, work in your pot while others, such as frying, don't, you might conclude that you are in the “health” business.
- Your pots (their color, shape, finish, and so on) will play an aesthetic role in the kitchen, so you are in the “decorating” domain.

By broadening your own thinking about what your business is, you may well end up defining it in ways you haven't thought of before. Some of these new ways may turn out to be keys to developing a successful marketing action plan.

Each of our businesses is dependent on other businesses. This interdependence is pervasive and shapes our activities. Thinking about that interdependence can help improve your self-definition as well as help others place you in the spectrum of commerce. An architect is a cog on a big wheel that includes her graduate educational institution and the contractors, engineers, landscapers, decorators, lawyers, and graphics people she works with.

When Wine Leaves a Wonderful Aftertaste

According to Scott Hafner, partner in Hafner Vineyard in Sonoma County's Alexander Valley, the most powerful advertising is word of mouth. "Many of our customers boast that we are their "secret winery"—a treasure they have found and want to tell their good friends about," Scott says. "We are small and don't produce a lot of wine, and therefore the perceived value is higher. This feeling of exclusivity adds to word of mouth and we encourage recommendations from time to time by asking our patrons to tell a few of their friends about us."

And it can help even more to provide the exact wording for the word of mouth. The business description Hafner includes in its newsletter, *Winemaker's Notes*, makes it easy for customers to pass along the good word. It reads: "Hafner Vineyard is committed to remain small, to make high-quality, fairly-priced wines through careful hands-on management of vineyard and winemaking, to sell directly to its patrons and to provide dependable, swift, personal service."

Hafner Vineyard does not advertise, nor is its wine sold in any stores. Instead, it sells directly to those who will be enjoying its wine. This relationship is most critical—and allows the vintner to control the way the product is represented. As an added bonus, the Hafner family finds that having personal relationships with patrons is the most pleasurable and profitable way to do business. By cutting out the middleman, the vintner says it is poised to offer better value and pass the savings on to patrons. Most wineries sell their wine to distributors, who then sell to wine shops, after which the wine eventually reaches consumers. But by dealing directly with customers, Hafner is able to resolve any potential problems, educate patrons, and get critical feedback vital to the business.

According to Scott, the direct link has been more difficult to forge in these changed times. "We used to have a mercantile community and continuity, and that has been lost," he says. "There is a huge absence of interaction between people who consume and the people who produce. We are reestablishing an emotional, nostalgic link. We consider it an enormous privilege that so many people respond favorably to us."

In response to customer requests and in the spirit of keeping up with the times, the Hafner family created a website (www.hafnervineyard.com). Now customers can take a virtual tour of the wine caves, see the people who make the wines, read the tasting notes on current and library vintages, check out what's available, and order what they want.

Consider another example. In contrast to the old-fashioned quill pen that clerks used to use to copy documents, a modern-day copy machine is a complicated piece of machinery that requires all sorts of experts to keep it running. To start with, the copier is dependent on the proper electric power supply. It functions within a limited temperature and humidity range and requires a certain type of paper and very precisely manufactured fluids and powders. Further, it needs highly specialized maintenance by people who show up with a trunk full of replacement parts that are impossible to get anywhere else.

The copier, then, is clearly in many domains: repair service, complex parts maintenance, reproduction, electrical apparatus, information transfer, chemistry, xerography, aesthetics, and toxicology (some fluids are poisonous). Each of these domains has an impact on the marketing of copy machines: manufacturers, wholesalers, retailers, consultants, and repair people.

To understand all aspects of your business and define the wide range of domains in which you can legitimately sell what you do, ask yourself these questions:

- What exactly is the role of my business in the life of my customer?
- How many domains does it touch?

For example, suppose you own a small grocery store and your only marketing technique is having periodic sales, featuring discounted items. When you do this, your business attracts attention only in the price domain. Many grocery stores never go much beyond this sort of marketing. In other words, they implicitly describe their business as “food for sale at reasonable or low prices.”

But what about broadening the definition of your grocery store to include the fact that the food your customers buy they must cook, clean, and store? And when you think about cooking, don't forget that a significant percentage of your customers regard the preparation and

eating of food as an important hobby, and a few elevate it to the status of a religion. Thinking about all of this might prompt you to:

- Put on a demonstration of how to cook an unusual vegetable that is in season. This would be an excellent way to both focus attention on a produce department aware enough to carry the vegetable in the first place and to show your customers that you think of food in ways other than how much it costs.
- If you are located in a congenial neighborhood or small town where such events are popular, you could invite local chefs to make their favorite barbecue sauce. Pass out samples of chicken dipped in the sauce as part of a contest to crown the local Barbecue King or Queen.
- Invite a nutritionist to autograph books inside your store.
- Set up a display of kitchen storage systems.
- Demonstrate how to make a casserole in a microwave oven.
- Have your local Tupperware distributor set up food storage containers and explain how they keep food fresh.
- Invite a cookbook author to sign copies of his book in the store.

Many of these things are done by stores that understand how to view their product in domains other than price. By broadening their view of their business, they are able to broaden their marketing plan. Unfortunately, the great majority of businesses have yet to really take advantage of the concept. In other words, they define what they do too narrowly.

Boiling Down What You Do

When we are approached by friends whose small service businesses are slow, we often suggest a very simple technique that draws on the principles discussed in this chapter. We ask the service provider to list four things she does on a 3" × 5" card and include her name, phone number, email address, hourly rate, and available hours. Their next step is to duplicate the card and give it to friends and acquaintances. Even this simple type of description always generates business.

For example, a bookkeeper friend who needed more customers listed:

- check reconciliation
- preparation and filing of quarterly tax returns
- general ledger posting, and
- making budget projections.

A photographer's card read as follows:

- photograph valuables for insurance records
- am very patient with babies and small children
- frame photos, and
- make home visits.

Within two weeks after each of these people sent their cards to 20 friends, both were busy.

One reason this simple card approach is effective is that it forces you to describe your business in terms that make sense to potential customers. Your description tends to fit the customers' language and speak to their immediate needs better than a nondescriptive title like "bookkeeper," "photographer," or "therapist."

What Your Business Does

The following is a definition of what my business does, in about 35 words:

We support—with information, training, and equipment and whatever else is needed for greater safety and enjoyment—individuals who are interested in kayaking. We offer good storage and beach areas, help them form clubs, offer trips, and support others in the industry.

EXAMPLE FOR SEA-TREK WATER SPORTS EQUIPMENT BUSINESS

What Your Business Does

The following is a definition of what my business does, in about 35 words:

We help businesses define their aesthetic and spatial requirements. We use our skills and talents to organize the relevant businesses, products, and technologies to create the desired goals. We work best with groups of five to 50 people.

EXAMPLE FOR A COMMERCIAL DESIGN COMPANY

Defining the Domains in Which Your Business Operates

By now you should be convinced that a clear, creative definition of your business is an essential basis for a marketing action plan, and that you simply cannot develop concrete marketing steps until you know who you are aiming at and what, exactly, you offer. Once you know what your business does, you can focus on those elements that make it unique.

Start by listing the domains your business operates in. To help in this process, examine your list of payables to see whom you really work with on a continuing basis. Now, review your checkbook to see what consultants you use, and make a list of them. Last, think over the general functions you fulfill (the major domains in which you operate) from a customer's perspective. Below are two examples.

Now, put your lists together, think about them, and refine them. Once you do, you should be able to describe your business.

If your business has a website you will find this domain exercise has an additional value. The current structure of the Web allows websites to list key words called "meta tags" on their website that are not visible on the Web page itself. The meta tag is read by search engines and in many cases can be useful in helping customers find you. The meta tag is a perfect place to put the relevant words that define the domain of your business.

The Domains in Which Your Business Operates

The major domains in which I operate (taken from my payables) are:

water safety equipment, marine suppliers, sports clothes, navigation equipment, equipment
storage, imported kayaks

The major domains in which I operate (from looking at checks paid to my consultants) are:

sports clubs, emergency first aid, environmental science, fabric technology, salt water lore and
tradition, water safety education

The general functions I fulfill (the major domains in which I operate) from a customer's perspective are:

recreation, health, stress reduction, weight control, travel, family fun

EXAMPLE FOR SEA-TREK WATER SPORTS EQUIPMENT BUSINESS

The Domains in Which Your Business Operates

The major domains in which I operate (taken from my payables) are:

lumber yards, hardware stores, paint suppliers, specialty catalogs, county refuse site,
insurance companies, electrical subcontractors, plumbing subcontractors, moulding company

The major domains in which I operate (from looking at checks paid to my consultants) are:

accountant, law firm, materials specialists, architects, painters, Mac-users group, computer
programmers

The general functions I fulfill (the major domains in which I operate) from a customer's perspective are:

bring dreams to reality, create an efficient, utilitarian, aesthetically pleasing environment,
child-safe play areas and entertainment centers for the family

EXAMPLE FOR A COMMERCIAL DESIGN COMPANY

Bob Schwartz's Tarrytown Conference Center

Bob Schwartz incorporated his vision of a business conference center into a larger domain than just meeting facilities: the domain of ideas and issues. Bob took over a beautiful country estate in the rolling hills just north of New York City and turned it into the Tarrytown Conference Center. By the beginning of the 1980s, he had made it into one of the most successful and prestigious corporate meeting centers in the U.S. Bob's background was in journalism, working for Time-Life and helping found *New York* magazine; also, along with his wife, he opened a small Japanese inn in the Catskill mountains, long before there was a single sushi bar in the U.S.

All these experiences combined to give Schwartz the necessary skill to create the Tarrytown success. In his favor, the bases were well covered from the start—the estate was beautiful, and he hired superb people to run the hotel and dining facilities. But plenty of conference centers have both of these attributes and still fail. Schwartz's genius was to realize that corporate executives, who were his principal market, were high-energy people like himself, interested in the world, ideas, and the excitement of social issues. While other conference centers focused on “strictly business” in the narrowest bottom-line sense, Schwartz organized a wide range of conferences at Tarrytown, including the friends of Margaret Mead discussing anthropological issues, Judith Crist with weekends on film, and a number of creative thinkers discussing the social concerns of business. Tarrytown's reputation began to grow.

To this, Schwartz added a School for Entrepreneurs and later a School for Intrapreneurs (see Chapter 8). He also created a 15,000-subscriber mailing list for a Tarrytown newsletter, which reported on the exciting diversity of the conference center's activities and provided background material on guest speakers and their ideas.

As Schwartz's view of his business broadened, he continued to add new projects. For example, he organized a conference and a group—The Tarrytown 100—made up of many of the most innovative entrepreneurs in the U.S. This project is not only glamorous and fun, but also will enhance his primary market as many of the young entrepreneurs take their places at the heads of future Fortune 500 companies. Says Schwartz: “The power of an idea or a vision is the driving force behind a successful marketing strategy, and the “whole” has to fit together perfectly.”

Providing Information on Businesses in Established Fields

Those of you who are in well-established fields—anything from a grocery or bakery to a television repair shop or retail clothing store—normally need not be concerned with communicating the basics of what you do. You are fortunate because the public has a pretty good knowledge of your type of business. If you show a group of strangers your business card, you can expect the great majority of them will generally understand your business and know at least some of the reasons why they need you. Obviously, however, these people won't know what special services and extras you offer, such as the women's clothing shop that does minor alterations at no extra charge, the grocery store that delivers, the laundromat that serves free coffee, the used auto parts company that delivers to commercial accounts, the bakery that accepts phone orders for specialty cakes, and so on. To fully enlist the positive energy of your friends and acquaintances, you must give them something to talk about. Your job is to make sure they are aware of the things that set you apart.

A business Michael consulted with, Joseph's Sewer Rooter of Los Angeles, has been in business more than a decade and makes service calls 24 hours a day, seven days a week. Joseph's problem is convincing a skeptical public that it really does provide such exceptional service. Skeptical customers are like amateurs; they know enough to doubt. Michael suggested that they develop five humorous stories about service calls made at odd hours and recount them on radio talk shows and at real estate luncheons, chamber of commerce meetings, and similar occasions. The real message of the stories, of course, is that Joseph's really does make house calls at any hour; that message will come through the humor of the stories.

The Romance of Handholding

Customers want to know how to use your goods and services efficiently. The more honest, easy-to-understand information and handholding you provide, the more likely they are to purchase. For example, a plant nursery that offers classes on how to grow abundant vegetables will sell far more tomatoes than one that simply displays the plants. Similarly, a hardware store that provides lots of how-to advice will sell lots more of almost everything than one that assumes customers know what they're doing. Providing good information doesn't result only in increased sales. It can be another great way to motivate customers to recommend your business.

It's not too difficult to figure out what a bed store might offer, but the Berkeley Design Shop offers a whole lot more than the usual mattresses and box springs. Michael Lavin, the owner, is in the business of selling a good night's sleep. He has done extensive research during his 25 years in the business on how to make a comfortable mattress and is extremely knowledgeable. Lavin usually spends an hour and sometimes two with a customer as they try out different mattresses and learn about what goes into a comfortable night's sleep. As part of his initial research, he gave away beds to physical therapists in exchange for their feedback. He also had them come into the store two nights a week for a year to answer customers' questions. And later, Lavin installed a pressure-mapping computer that greatly facilitates a custom match between mattress and customer. As you lie on the bed, Lavin receives an instant readout on the monitor indicating your particular pressure points.

When you leave the Berkeley Design Shop you are a truly educated customer, and after a night's sleep on your new mattress will probably tell all of your friends.

2

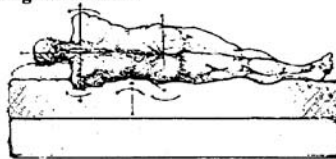
YOU CAN'T GET COMFORTABLE

Comfort is closely related to pressure distribution. If your mattress yields too much, not enough, or unevenly, pressure imbalance can cause your sleeping posture to become unnatural. You contort your body--twisting spine, waist, shoulders, hips or legs--trying to find relief.

Every body shift causes a mini-awakening. Whether you remember them or not, these awakenings disturb the sleep cycle and contribute to morning fatigue.

In addition, you may be plagued by lower back ache or stiff shoulders and neck because your bed was not able to provide a comfortable, natural body alignment during the night.

Spine-aligned comfort



The European Sleep Works at the Berkeley Design Shop carries exclusively 100% natural latex foam rubber mattresses, which offer the greatest comfort and natural body alignment we have found. We also dual-adjust mattresses for couples, to provide a comfortable night's sleep for each person.

To take another example, almost everyone has some idea of what a bail bondsman does. Just the same, a bondsman who provides better service can do a lot to gain the business, if not the affection, of potential customers. A bondsman who accepts collect calls, takes personal checks or jewelry in an emergency, is open 24 hours, and has a radio-dispatched car and national service should emphasize these facts.

A bank is another business that doesn't need to be explained to potential customers. So, rather than bore people with explanations of check cashing services or safe deposit boxes, a wise banker will emphasize unique services. For example, offering to have bank personnel visit small business borrowers by appointment or paying for a messenger service to deliver paperwork or pick up deposits. Or a bank might offer to send an account executive to work with the business's accounting personnel to prepare forms and other paperwork needed to switch the business accounts to the new bank.

There are many ways an established business can inform customers about these kinds of extra services. For example, the 7-E convenience store chain brilliantly chose a name that told its customers that it was open earlier and later than traditional grocery stores. More typical methods include flyers sent out to your mailing list and signs in retail stores or office waiting rooms. You can also note an extra service or two on your business card and personally explain the availability of extra services when customers visit your business. In occupations where you deal with a relatively few people, you can even call them to let them know about a particularly valuable new service. Chapter 8 discusses many more strategies.

\$ BUY - RENT - HIRE \$

- tractors are expensive to purchase
- associated implements can double that
- add 10-15% for operation + maintenance



PURCHASE

- with rare exceptions, the most expensive choice both short-term and long-term
- ties up many thousands of dollars saves a few hundred
- requires maintenance and repair
- makes financial sense only if you have several hundred hours work per year

RENT

- dramatically cheaper than owning
- still must learn to operate
- still must pay for fuel (and any breakage)
- have to haul it home or pay for delivery

HIRE

- costs similar to renting, minus fuel
- experienced, skilled operator
- includes ALL equipment costs

the Gentleman Farmer

is the most reliable, cost-effective way to get the right job done with the right tool at the right time.

Businesses in New or Obscure Fields

It's one thing to market an established business by convincing customers that you do a better job or offer extra service, and quite another to let people know about a business in a field they have never heard of. For example, if you are a businessperson who sells wholesale lapidary supplies or structural mylar members, very few people will know what you do from a quick perusal of a business card. Even if your business isn't quite this obscure—say you are a freelance video technician, a computer-aided drafting firm, or the operator of a papermaking studio—exactly what you do may not be clearly understood.

Don't assume that your business is immune from the need to educate existing and potential customers because it has been in operation for some time. For instance, even today there are many people who don't take advantage of the services of specialized travel agents, services that buy airline seats in bulk and negotiate low rates at no charge to the customer. Specialized agents can get flights to Hong Kong, Tokyo, and Amsterdam at rates that are half of published fares.

Many owners of new types of businesses do realize they must educate people about their field in order to create customers. Take the tofu business as an example. For the uninitiated, tofu is a Japanese soybean extract: the cottage cheese of soybean milk. It was introduced in the United States in the early 1970s as part of the health food movement.

Bill Schurtleif and his wife, Akiko Aoyagi, were among the pioneers in creating the first small market for the product with their *Book of Tofu* (Ballentine), which they promoted with a nationwide media tour. On their tour, they gave order forms to interested people to buy “do-it-yourself” tofu-making kits. Schurtleif and Aoyagi understood that if they were to sell many books, people needed more and better information about tofu, the most important of which was what it tastes like.

Now, several decades later, many people in the food business take it for granted that everyone knows what tofu is. This, of course, is nonsense;

many Americans have yet to taste tofu. In other words, people in the tofu business, even after years of educating potential customers, have barely scratched the surface. To further expand their market, they still have a major teaching job to do.

Redwood Hill Farm, an award-winning goat dairy that has the greatest variety of goat milk products of any dairy in the United States, has been in business in Sonoma County, California, for over 20 years. Not only is it in a rather obscure field, it also has the added challenge of overcoming buyer resistance to its product. Even though the dairy is successful, it never lets up on efforts to educate both existing and potential customers. The most effective way that owners Jennifer Bice and the late Steven Schack found was to give out samples of their yogurt, milk, and a wide variety of cheeses so customers can taste for themselves. Jennifer brings some of her 400 goats to fairs and invites the public to “Open Farm” days during the summer to milk the dairy goats and play with the babies and enjoy goat milk yogurt and cheese. The animals are extremely friendly, and the public can see that the operation is immaculate. Along with the samples, they hand out recipes and literature at fairs informing customers that the farm uses organic feed whenever available, does not use hormones such as BST to increase milk production, and is committed to producing the best-tasting, least-processed goat milk products possible.

Steve Halpern is a composer and performer of a very specialized type of soothing and meditative electronic music. In the early 1970s, he was a pioneer in a field that later attracted many musicians (of course, Ravel and others had done it earlier with traditional instruments). Halpern chose to put his music on cassettes, a medium that had almost no retail market at the time. After questioning a number of people who responded favorably to his music, he found that many patronized natural food stores. One by one he called on these stores and played his tapes for the owners. Sure enough, they liked it, stocked them, and even played the tapes as background music for their own enjoyment. Not

surprisingly, the tapes slowly began to sell. Each tape had an address and price for additional ordering. Several years later, when FM radio stations began playing his music, Halpern's audience grew even more rapidly.

Ambica, a potter, was among the first Americans to work successfully with low-fired raku, a process of firing pottery that was relatively unknown and unappreciated among art, craft, and pottery buyers. To help people understand it, she scheduled regular evening events where she served tea and snacks in her studio. Generally, she was able to attract ten to 15 guests a month. At each event, she encouraged people to make an object of clay, which she would glaze and fire. For those who were shy, she had ready-made pieces that they could engrave or personalize. Nearly everyone came back to pick up their pieces after the firing and looked around the studio at Ambica's work as well. The market developed, and her work sold.

Charmoon Richardson, the owner of Wild About Mushrooms in Forestville, California, has developed an excellent marketing plan based on educating potential clients. Many people are leery about eating mushrooms other than the ordinary kind found in supermarkets, and the more adventurous often have no idea how to prepare the exotic mushroom varieties. Charmoon has figured out how to educate both kinds of clients.

Salli first met Charmoon at an environmental gathering where he was cooking exotic mushrooms with a delicious marinade, giving out samples, and answering questions. She loved his samples and attended his Feast of Forest Mushrooms held at Mistral, a popular eatery. The event included an introductory talk and slide show and displays of fresh wild and exotic mushrooms, followed by a five-course dinner featuring a variety of forest mushrooms. Some of Charmoon's other events include mushroom identification walks, the Wine and Mushroom Festival, weekend forays for mushroom gathering, and mushroom dyeing and papermaking. In addition to sending out quarterly updates via snail mail, he maintains an email notification list for special events.

Some businesses, if not exactly obscure, are traditionally very low profile. Good Vibrations, a San Francisco and Berkeley store that sells sex toys, video and audio tapes, guides to safer sex, and books, has broken out of the sleazy sex-shop mold and now, after two decades of operation, is recognized worldwide. Education is central to putting potential customers at ease. The business does public outreach at human sexuality courses and clinics, sponsors workshops, hosts book signings, and acts as a resource in the community. It publishes informative and humorous catalogues and newsletters that discuss the products. The Good Vibrations motto is, “If you want something done right, do it yourself,” so it is fitting that it is the sponsor of Masturbation Month, which has been picked up by national magazines.

Within the catalogue they make sure customers know just what they will be getting by clearly marking each category. In the book section, for example, under Family Sexuality are titles such as *Talking With Your Child About Sex and Period*; in the smut series there are titles like *Modern Lust* and *Lusty Lesbians*.

The business also makes potential customers, who would never patronize the typical store that sells sex toys, comfortable by assuring them of confidentiality. It never

Vibrator ratings

All of the vibrators in the catalog are rated for their sound volume and vibration intensity at the highest speed in the lower right corner of each description. Here are what the numbers mean:

Volume

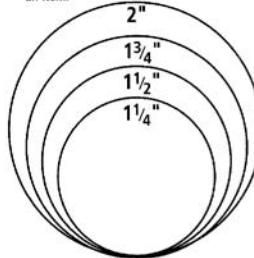
- 1: Almost silent
- 2: Very quiet (like a bumblebee or hummingbird near your ear)
- 3: Medium quiet (like a lawnmower or motorcycle in the distance)
- 4: Slightly loud (like a car or motorcycle outside your window)
- 5: Loud (like an electric shaver in the same room)

Intensity

Vibrator intensity is measured on a scale of 1 (mild) to 5 (strong). The best way to get an idea of a vibrator's intensity is to compare it to the ranking of a vibrator you're familiar with trying.

A note on dimensions

Length is measured from the top of the base to the tip. The diameter indicated is measured at the widest point. Remember, diameter is the width across, not around, an item.



Care for your toys

For all toys: If you'd like to swap toys with a partner or use the same toy vaginally and anally, clean the toy carefully or use a condom on the toy for each new use to minimize the risk of transmitting viruses or bacteria.

Vibrators

Vibrators can be wiped clean with a cloth moistened in warm water or alcohol. Only waterproof vibrators (marked with a water drop icon) should be immersed in water.

Silicone dildos and plugs

Clean silicone with mild soap and water, rinse it well and thoroughly dry it before putting it away. Silicone products can also be safely washed in the top rack of the dishwasher or sterilized by boiling. Note: avoid breaking the surface of the silicone. Once even a small crack has formed, silicone can tear quite easily.

Rubber dildos and plugs and latex toys

Rubber is porous, so using rubber toys with condoms is the easiest way to keep them clean. Hand clean rubber or latex toys with mild soap and water, rinse well and dry completely.

Harnesses

Keep your harness clean as you would any other piece of intimate apparel. Be careful to not leave your leather harness in front of direct heat.

Latex safer sex products

Use only water- or silicone-based lubricants with latex, never oil- or petroleum-based products. Keep latex in a cool, dry place. Don't reuse latex safer sex products.

sells, rents, or gives customers' names to anyone else, and all items and literature are shipped in plain brown packaging with their corporate name (Open Enterprises) on the return label. To encourage customers to tell their friends, they offer to send them a brochure. The mature approach taken by founder Joanie Blank and adopted by the current worker/owner cooperative sets Good Vibrations apart from others in the field.

Marketing With Videos

Over the past few decades moving images have become more common, cost effective, and easier to use, allowing many businesses to use videos (and more recently, DVDs) and CDs successfully in their marketing.

Videos and CDs have been used by teachers of dance, voice, physical training, sports, and martial arts to introduce material and demonstrate special skills and techniques. The use of video is common in many training and service fields as well as gaming, pet care, and entertainment. It is a particularly useful tool in marketing in all those cases where there can be personal follow-up.

A good example of how video can expand a business is the Oakland, California, personal injury law firm, Padway and Padway. As early as the 1980s, this firm provided free videos to people who phoned in with questions about personal injury. The videos explained how potential clients could evaluate, on their own, their legal rights and courtroom prospects. After viewers of the initial video became clients, more videos were used to help the clients gather relevant information and prepare for cross examination. The videos were so successful in the Padway firm that the owners formed a separate business and sold versions of the videos to other law firms.

A video sent to prospective clients of Top of the World Community, located in Ocala, Florida, is another good example. The video allows potential customers to view a retirement village with their family and helps answer their concerns and questions. The potential client

can go to the website, click on to various links, and view many enticing photos, floor plans, and other relevant information. But none of this demonstrates the camaraderie or enthusiasm of those enjoying retirement in an active community like a video can (www.ontopoftheworldcommunities.com/links.html).

The businesses we have seen benefit from the use of video do not fill a single category or categories. In this chapter you've defined what your business does and defined the domains in which you operate. This information will determine whether a video product is appropriate to your business marketing. Could your brief 35-word statement about what you do be turned into a video? Do the domains in which your business operates lend themselves to moving and changing images? Could you visually show the transformation of your clients when they first deal with you to the outcomes that they experience over time? Are there elements of your business that lend themselves to moving visual imagery? For example:

- If you deal with food or plants, could the source of your product be shown in an interesting way with time-lapse photography?
- Does your product or service lend itself to exciting visual examples of the outdoors, such as ocean kayaking, climbing, or even photography itself?
- Could your product or service be interesting when in motion, such as robots, bicycle parts, or furniture?
- Can you demonstrate a visual change over time as would be seen in cabinet construction, organizing files, remodeling, chimney cleaning, or even some forms of healing?
- Are you involved in fields such as safety, emergencies, first aid, or safety engineering?

Using video and CDs to interact with your customers

Once you have decided that your business can make effective use of video, the next marketing question concerns how to communicate with your current and potential customers.

Providing video at your workplace, office, retail site, studio, or facility.

We are all accustomed to seeing demonstration videos at hardware stores for power tools, in clothing stores showing models on fashion runways, and in sporting stores demonstrating uses for equipment.

We are increasingly seeing small screens in retail outlets. For example, a coffee shop that sells coffee from Yemen has a small flat screen with a 30-second video showing the people who pick the coffee high in the desert mountains. In another display the small screen shows an elderly man easily making a cup of espresso in the 30 seconds using a machine that is on display next to the video.

If your clients wait for you (as is the case with dentists, doctors, massage therapists, family therapists, banks, auto repair shops, and anywhere else that magazines are left lying around) this is an opportune place to use videos to display the technologies, skills, and information that are relevant to your business and helpful to your clients.

If you decide to make videos available, don't let them get old, make sure they aren't preachy or boring, and consider making them available to your customers to take with them.

Take-home videos.

There are many circumstances where the relationship between your business and your customers can benefit from ongoing contact and information. Nutritionists, dentists, acupuncturists, and other health professionals provide videos to fill in the gaps in information that cannot be provided with each visit. While there is nothing wrong with offering professional videos made by other people, the marketing value of these videos is greater when the medium includes an introduction by the

business giving the product away, and this has still greater marketing impact when it is built around the person or persons in the business.

Handout videos.

CDs, flash memory cards, and similar video media have become so inexpensive that we have been given CDs by realtors, insurance agents, home remodelers, and a wide range of sales people. We have also been given business cards that are miniature CDs. In a few cases, wholesale businesses that we regularly use have given us flash memory cards to promote new products. The DVD is another medium that should be considered in the same circumstances where a business would hand out promotional cards or literature.

Reference videos.

When a business has books, tapes, online sites, and online videos to use as business or instructional references, it is frequently easier to give a customer a CD with the references on it as the source, rather than a printed sheet with many URLs that have to be typed in by hand. The CD also offers the opportunity to have a voice-over or a personal introduction and explanation to go with the reference material.

Charlize Meirs, who works as a very highly paid private editor, sends new clients a DVD that features her displaying books she has worked on and explaining the wide range of editing issues that she has dealt with. She also references the style manuals she uses and the reasons she uses them. Much of this reference discussion is more effectively conveyed on video; it can sound preachy when done over the phone or by mail.

Technical issues of video**Do it yourself? No.**

It is rare that a businessperson has the time and skill to make a video that is of sufficient quality to be effective as a marketing tool. Hiring a specialist who makes videos, especially a firm that has experience in online videos, is a wise decision.

In an effective video the sound, voice, color, contrast, editing, and background are readily compared by viewers to the standards of video in the marketplace. As is true with your premises, so it is true with your video marketing: Your quality should be appropriate to the standards of the field of business you are in.

When making a video of any length, expect the planning and storyboarding to be the bulk of the time involved. (A storyboard is a set of images, usually hand drawn, that track the series of images to be used in the final video.) Making the video itself will take only a fraction of the time involved in creating the entire project.

As with other marketing material, especially graphic material, show your proposed work to a large sample of customers, friends, and suppliers before using it. Ask their opinions with an open mind and respond appropriately.

Short and informational

People seem to have a short attention span when it comes to video information. We can't explain this but it may have to do with the size of the screen, lifestyles, or patterns of media behavior. While this is not true for subjects that are consciously chosen by the viewer for study and intense investigation it is true when people are seeking just a "bite" of information.

Instructional video has been used in hardware stores and sporting goods stores for a long time to display such goods as electric tools and outdoor vehicles such as kayaks. Customers will often watch a five to ten minute video demonstration if they are considering buying the product but will only glance if they aren't planning to buy.

On the other hand, short videos of the same products, with lengths of 30 seconds, will more often generate closer attention of passersby. The lesson is fairly clear: why to buy the product or service requires a short video; how the product or service works, means a longer video for buyers who are further along the decision-to-buy scale.

Short and entertaining

The inherent nature of business is that customers have a wide range of diversity. Part of the fun of business is that customers are different enough from each other that they are interesting and constantly surprising.

The consequence of this diversity is that it is hard to create a business marketing tool that appeals to the broad range of diverse customers and prospects. Humor can be very appealing to a few, uninteresting to others, and offensive to still others. The same is true of all forms of entertainment.

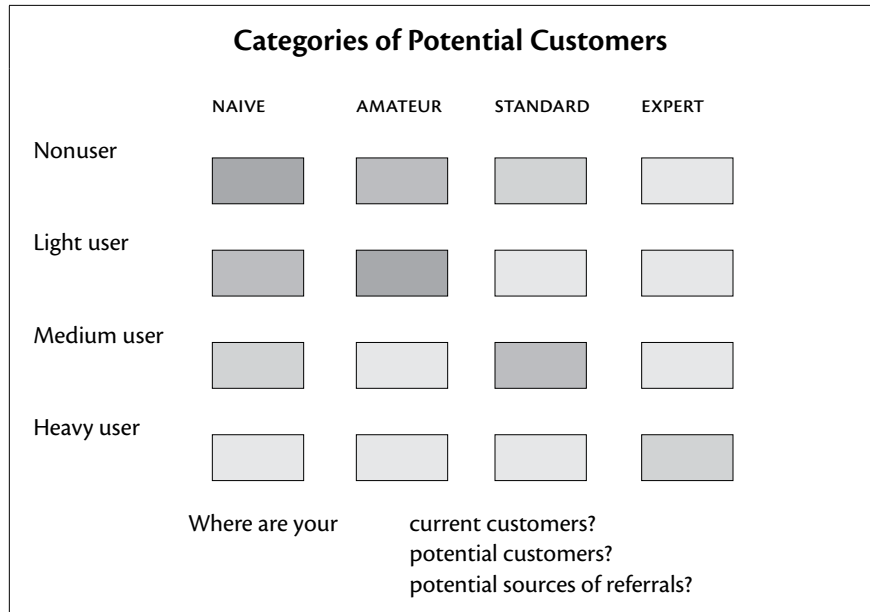
Nevertheless, marketing materials benefit from having entertainment qualities. Entertainment qualities are: surprise, a story line, excitement, glamour, and mystery.

Experience with marketing of many businesses suggests that no single rule can apply to the interaction of business, customer, prospect, and staff, but if there were a rule it is to first consider creating and using a marketing tool that is entertaining and short.

Whom to Educate

Once people in a new business face up to the need to educate their customers, the next question becomes whom to educate. Don't assume, as many small businesspersons do, that this is a trivial question. The key to getting a good personal recommendation marketing plan in motion is to get your message before the eyes and ears (and in some instances, the noses and mouths) of the right people as efficiently as possible. To put it another way, because all small businesses have finite (often painfully finite) resources, you must concentrate your educational energies on the people most likely to respond positively.

The following chart illustrates categories of potential customers.



It may be surprising to you to learn that many users do not fall along the diagonal, increasing their usage of your business as they become more expert about what you do. This is important to know, because most marketing strategies are based on moving people along this diagonal—teaching them more about your business as they increase their use of your product or service, with the idea of increasing use even more. There is nothing wrong with this strategy unless you overlook the facts that lots of potential customers also exist in other categories (the boxes on our chart), and that catering to the needs of these customers can also produce excellent results. For example, there are people who don't use a product but have expert knowledge, such as an aerodynamics engineer who doesn't fly, or a professor of criminal law who rarely, if ever, sees the inside of a courtroom. Both of these people are surely asked by friends and relatives (and maybe even by business or government, if they are

retained as consultants) for recommendations about businesses or people who provide services in their fields.

Similarly, there are heavy product users who are naive, such as the wealthy champagne drinker who just loves “those happy little bubbles,” or the person who orders large bouquets for the home each week because it’s expected, but doesn’t know the names of most of the flowers. People in these groups may have no interest in increasing their sophistication about the product. The naive user of a flower service may care a lot more about whether the business will deliver on short notice than whether it publishes a newsletter full of interesting horticultural facts.

The point is that any good marketing strategy must communicate with customers who have a number of different levels of expertise. If you own a mountaineering shop and concentrate on communicating with your class 5 climber customers, you are likely to talk over the heads of, and perhaps even alienate, the much larger number of weekend backpackers.

Similarly, if you own a men’s clothing store and concentrate all of your marketing strategy on educating people about fabric, you may totally lose the interest of the many men who simply want a decent suit that won’t wrinkle on airplanes.

To make this point in a different but important way, consider how often people who are naive about a particular product or service purchase it as a gift, as is often the case when a man buys a woman jewelry, or someone who knows a relative is into photography buys her a camera lens.

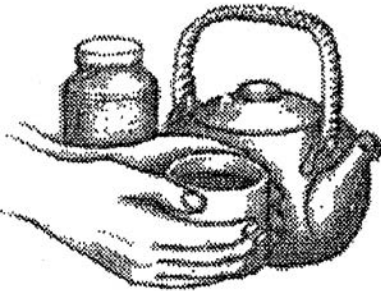
Businesses that traditionally cater only to men or only to women should be particularly aware of changing societal gender roles and broaden their marketing accordingly. Thirty years ago, men bought most cars. Today, women buy cars (and trucks) by the millions. If you’re selling pickup trucks and assume that women are only picking out the color after some man decides on the model, you’re going to overlook a lot of potential customers who are probably eager for helpful information about what you’re selling. Similarly, today men buy skin

lotion, cookware, and diapers in numbers that would have seemed amazing less than a generation ago.

Osmosis, a company that marketed the first enzyme bath in America, got immediate results by directing its marketing at expert nonusers. Owner Michael Stusser printed a brochure explaining the enzyme bath to potential customers:

“A remarkable form of heat therapy from Japan, which relaxes, soothes and energizes the body, mind and spirit. Unlike other heat treatments, the enzyme bath generates heat biologically, through fermentation, nature’s purification process. The bath is composed of fragrant antiseptic cedar fiber, rice bran and over 600 active enzymes. The action of the enzymes produces a special quality of heat that improves circulation and metabolism, helps the body to break down toxins and thoroughly cleanses and beautifies the skin. The bath often relieves aches and pains, and is especially beneficial for people suffering from tension, fatigue and high stress.”

Since the enzyme bath is almost unknown in the United States (even though it’s been enjoyed by the Japanese for over 40 years), Stusser clearly must teach people a good deal about this product before they are likely to buy it. In this case, trying to move a lot of people up the diagonal line on the marketing chart from naive/light user to expert/heavy user would almost surely be both incredibly time-consuming and expensive, probably involving writing a book (and a number of magazine



The enzyme bath treatment consists of three parts and lasts an hour and a half. It begins in our Japanese tea garden where you are served an herbal tea blended especially for Osmosis. The tea is mixed with enzymes made from over 25 different organically-grown plants. This preparation is a digestive aid that is soothing to the whole body and works with the metabolic processes that occur during the bath.

and journal articles), doing extensive public relations to sell the book, and giving public demonstrations and teaching classes, to mention just a few.

Perhaps eventually Stusser will find the time to do many, or even all, of these, but because he needed customers right away, he decided instead to concentrate his marketing effort on informing experts in the field of bodywork instead of potential users of the product. These people are primarily health professionals who practice alternative healing methods and have studied Asian medicine. Some of them had heard about the enzyme baths but had never had a chance to experience them. Stusser provided them with an opportunity to take a complimentary bath. Many of those who responded loved the enzyme bath and immediately began referring their clients who they felt would benefit from the relaxation and penetrating heat.

Occasional giveaways can be a good way to educate potential customers. Athena Azar, owner of America's Luggage Depot in Petaluma, California, noticed that Michael, who was shopping for a cardholder that he could use for credit cards, had another cardholder that he used for his business cards. Athena knew that Michael used his business cards frequently and that he probably didn't know he could have his colorful business card printed on a leather cardholder. She took one of his cards and had a beautiful cardholder custom made for him with his card image on the outside. She presented the new business cardholder to him as a gift—good promotion to a customer who could then tell many other prospective customers.

Working With Knowledgeable Customers

Nan Hohenstein, a skilled publicist whose one-person San Francisco agency specializes in handling publicity for the publishing industry (such as author appearances on radio and TV shows) and also publicizes events such as fairs and trade shows, concentrates on knowledgeable businesspeople in the field—for example, small publishers with an even smaller budget. Many people in this group, because they have been only light users of publicity services, fear that comprehensive public relations (P.R.) services will be too expensive. Holstein's goal is to help these people become medium or heavy users by explaining to them how she can lay out an overall campaign but allow them to do many of the time-consuming P.R. tasks themselves at a very reasonable cost.

Hohenstein explains, "I'm really good at what I do but have a difficult time with certain kinds of clients—the worst client for me being someone who has rarely used a publicist. These people really don't know enough to appreciate the work that goes into what I will do for them. If lots of people show up at an event I organize, those clients tend to assume that it's in the nature of things, not acknowledging how much my getting the word out contributed. That's why I prefer to concentrate on clients who know a good deal about how the publicity business works, say someone who has worked in an arm's-length relationship with a big P.R. firm that has charged them high prices. While these people are generally knowledgeable, they don't know how to use my more personal and flexible services, which allow the client to save a great deal of money by doing their own envelope stuffing, follow-up calls, etc. My job is to educate this second group on how to use my services effectively. Once I do this, it's usually relatively easy to produce positive results at a moderate cost and I naturally get repeat business."

Sylvana LaRocca owns Made to Order, an Italian delicatessen in Berkeley, California. She concentrates on educating nonusers about Italian delicacies. In addition to fresh pasta and imported cheese and wines, LaRocca stocks a wide array of Italian delicacies, many flown to her fresh. Realizing that her customers are unlikely to purchase things they can't pronounce and have never tasted, she follows the fairly standard practice of placing samples of many items on the counter. In addition, however, she hand-prints large colorful signs, which she hangs on the wall behind the counter, which say things like, "Mascarpone: made from fresh cream. A heavenly cheese from Italy that can be eaten with fish, fruit or spread on chocolate cake—perfect on bread with olive oil and salt."

LaRocca's idea is to stimulate her customers to ask about these products. She then has the chance to enthusiastically educate her customers about Italian delicacies, her favorite subject. Most people who hear her share her excitement and take home a bag or two of goodies they hadn't planned to buy when they entered the store. Eventually, many even learn the correct pronunciations, which they use to impress their friends, thus educating a whole new group of potential customers.

Byerly's is a prospering chain of grocery stores that almost never advertises. The manager of each store in the Minnesota-based chain has considerable leeway to provide services in the particular neighborhood. Every store has a full-time home economist who helps customers with nutrition and menus. A wonderful example of its superior service and education of customers in this health conscious age is Byerly's color-coding of foods for special diets. For example, all low-cholesterol foods in the store might have a blue tag, and customers can also get a list of them from the store's home economist.

Allen/Vanness, which began by selling elegant woven fabric available in a wide range of patterns at craft fairs, decided its best marketing strategy was to educate clients in the "naive heavy users" category. It expanded to include scarves, shawls, wraps, and ties, selling to expensive designer

stores in San Francisco, Los Angeles, and New York. Initially, the people who patronized these pricey outlets had little real appreciation of the extraordinary quality of the handwoven fabrics used in the garments; they just liked them. To increase sales, Allen/Vanness decided to help customers understand why they liked woven products so much. They taught the salespeople in the various shops about how their handwoven goods were made and why they offered such a superior value. When this information was passed along to the customers, sales went up.

Clover Stornetta Farms, based in Petaluma, California, is the originator of the Northern California icon, Clo the cow—a whimsical bovine whose hoofs and countenance brighten the morning commute with billboards proclaiming “I moo therefore I am,” “Wolfgang Amadeus Moozart,” “Tip Clo Through Your Two Lips,” and “Two Clo’s Fur Comfort.”

Clover also uses the side of its milk carton to educate customers about the unique qualities of the product within it. The carton blurbs explain that Clover’s milk comes from 16 family farms producing the highest-quality milk in the United States—based on coliform counts, standard plate counts, and somatic cell counts. It is also the only dairy processor in the western United States awarded the Free Farmed label by the American Humane Association for humanely produced dairy products. In this time of genetic food alteration and added hormones, Clover’s milk carton is an important tool to inform customers of its unique product in a direct way.

Environmentally friendly clothing product manufacturers have the job of educating customers about an entire new field. An example is Polartec® jackets, whose fabric is made from recycled plastic bottles. The company informs each customer that the quality of the product is unsurpassed. Not only do the jackets come in stunning colors, the fabric is a friendly plastic. It doesn’t pill and doesn’t get itchy. It stays soft and comfy; it is rain repellent, can be treated with Scotchguard for waterproofing, and lasts and looks great for a long time. Technically

speaking, all clothing on the American market must pass rigid tests for flammability. This one is no exception. Now and then you hear about a recall; there have been none on this product. Customers take pride in wearing the jackets because they feel they are participating in recycling.

Our favorite yarn store follows the traditional approach of converting novices to amateurs to encourage them to patronize the business more. The shop owner estimates that at one time or another, 40% of her customers depend on her to help them with a project. As they become better knitters and crocheters, many of her patrons move from naive/light users to amateur/medium users. Without instruction, business would surely suffer.

Do People Know What You Do?

At a party, ____% of the people who hear the name and a very brief description of my business will know a little about the details of what I really do. [For instance, 100% would know what a barber does, but only 3% would know that an oncologist studies tumors.]

At a meeting of businesspeople generally (for example, the Chamber of Commerce), about ____% of the people who hear the name and a very brief description of my business will know a lot about it.

When a potential new customer approaches, how much does he or she really know about what I do?

☐ Doesn't know anything ☐ Knows a little ☐ Knows quite a bit and is very confident

Among new customers, ____% have used someone else in my field (or a similar product) before.

Are there experts in my field (or closely related fields) who have had little or no experience with my goods or services?

☐ YES ☐ NO

List by category:

Are there specific categories of people who would have less than an average level of knowledge about my field who might use my business if they knew more about it, such as people who seldom travel (about the travel business), landlords, commuters, and so on? List:

How to Let Customers Know Your Business Is Excellent

Tell Them Yourself	165
Help Customers Judge for Themselves.....	171
Direct Measures.....	171
Public Measures.....	175
Educational Measures	180
Referrals.....	181
Giving Customers Authority for Your Claims	184

We've just talked about the need to decide which groups of customers and friends to focus your marketing efforts on. This chapter discusses the best ways to give those people enough information about your business so that they will know why it is good and be able to communicate this to others. The point of doing this is obvious: To really become effective missionaries on your behalf, your customers, potential customers, and friends need to know specifically what sets you apart from others in your field.

How do you make sure your customers have enough information about you to spread the word knowledgeably? One way is to tell them yourself. The way you run your business, of course, makes a strong statement. However, you should also make an effort to give your customers information that lets them judge the quality of your business for themselves.

For example, a plumber might say, "I'm glad you let me install $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch copper pipe instead of plastic, because I feel confident it will last two generations without giving you any problems. Also, it works so well that the pressure in your shower is now good enough that you can take a shower while washing the clothes and running the dishwasher, without loss in pressure."

Or, if you tell a customer in your boutique that the half-Dacron, half-cotton jumpsuit she is considering buying to bring on a trip will dry on a hanger in two hours without any wrinkles, and it does, that person has clear evidence that you and your business can be trusted. Or, if a respected financial columnist states that for a certain type of investment, a 15% return is excellent, and your personal finance advising service has just done substantially better than that, you will want to be sure your clients are aware of how you compare.

New Balance bases their marketing on the concept that high-quality athletic shoes can be made in America at competitive prices. They include a hang tag with every purchase explaining their commitment

to providing jobs for American workers and to support domestic manufacturers and suppliers where possible.

A second way to ensure that your customers have information is to have someone they trust tell them how good your business is. Positive validation by a trusted person can be extremely effective. For instance, think about how good you would feel if a fashion designer told you the suit you were wearing was beautifully tailored, or if your uncle who is a dentist looked into your mouth and assured you that your regular dentist did excellent work, or if an award-winning architect remarked positively about the remodeling job you had just done on your kitchen.

You can and should, of course, use both of these methods to let your customers know that you run an excellent business. Once they know this, they will not only tend to patronize you more themselves, but will also surely recommend your business to others. Let's now look at these techniques in detail.

Tell Them Yourself

How can you effectively communicate your confidence and pride in what you do without boring people to death or appearing hopelessly egotistical? The most immediate way is to have your own genuine good feelings about what you do be so pervasive that your customers immediately pick up on them. Earlier in this book, we discussed the importance of having a clean business, enthusiastic employees, open books and honest pricing, and offering lots of extras, as well as selling a quality product or service. All these things tell your customers that you are a first-class operation. In addition, it is extremely important to pay attention to details, such as how you finally present your product or service, including the wrapping, if any, clear instructions on use, and what to do if something goes wrong with a product or a service proves disappointing.

Once these basic good business techniques are in place, you are ready for the next step: maintaining a high level of communication with your customers. Communication (oral when possible, written when not) should be built into the operation of your business. There is no need for this contact to be boastful. People are sick of being told by advertisements that a certain product or service is bigger, better, faster, or sexier. Make the communication meaningful and interesting—beyond a functional description of what you’re selling. A catalogue can educate your customers about what you do, especially if you tie it to a story. We all love a good story, and are more likely to patronize a business that takes the time to tell us one. The following brief excerpts from mail order catalogues illustrate the technique.

Burgers’ Smokehouse, located in the Ozark Mountains of Missouri, has this to say about its hams: “These are the hams our fathers, grandfathers, and their forefathers made. It is the ham that was made at the time of the Pilgrims and long before. They are cured the old-fashioned way—outdoors in a corn crib or, as in our case, in a special building which allows fresh country air to move continually around the hams—and aged for a year. Because it is so time-consuming, most production of this type of ham is for private consumption, and we are virtually the only firm that makes it in commercial quantities.”

The House of Tyrol in Cleveland, Georgia, sells beer steins to collectors. Its catalog contains not only detailed descriptions of the steins, but background information that is bound to captivate collectors. For example, with a description of a stein that depicts Frederick the Great and the Prussian eagle is the following story:

“His father thought him a weakling, beat him and cast him into a dungeon for a spell. Indeed, Frederick II played the flute, corresponded with Voltaire for 42 years, was known as the philosopher king, and even anonymously published a refutation of Machiavelli. Yet, Frederick, inheriting an army of 100,000 giants, wrested Silesia from Maria Theresa; held off the combined forces of Austria, Russia, and France; and

later joined in the first partition of Poland. When he died in 1786, he was known as the Great, and Prussia rivaled Austria for control of the German states.”

Here are several other examples of businesses that tell their customers how good they are in creative and helpful ways:

- a delicatessen that makes sure all new customers know how to prepare the exotic foods they purchase
- a caterer who has a favorite recipe printed on business cards
- a craftsperson who includes a card with every piece of finished work, explaining how it was made and where the materials came from
- a bakery that prints on its bags its policy about using only natural ingredients
- a dentist who calls the evening that he performed a root canal to ask how you are feeling.

Here are some small businesses that do a good job of having others communicate favorable information about them:

- John Lande, a lawyer who specializes in mediation, publishes a newsletter/bulletin to educate people about the reasons for choosing mediation over an adversarial approach to dispute resolution. This newsletter contains articles by people prominent in the field discussing the best mediation techniques and other important information about the field. Lande sends his newsletter to other lawyers who might refer mediation cases to him, as well as to a wide range of legal practitioners and former clients who might know of others who could use his services.
- The Redwood Funeral Society publishes an annual “Consumer Protection Price Survey on Death Arrangements,” which lists prices broken down by services offered and whether they are an independent provider or part of a conglomerate.

- Mary's Flowers in Seattle sells special flowers, shears, decorative figurines, and vases used for traditional Japanese flower arrangements. She always has a fresh arrangement in the window created by a person skilled in the field. This subtly, but obviously, tells her customers that her flowers and other materials are first-class.

No matter what your business, you can offer a descriptive brochure about your goods or services, extensive descriptions on your label (if that is appropriate), guidebooks, instruction manuals, or handouts containing basic information about your goods and services. Remember, if your business is truly a good one, the more your customers know about your field, the better you will stack up.

A subtle but effective message that every customer's needs are considered important is the nonalcoholic beverage pairing. Discovering which nonalcoholic beverages go well with what dishes is a challenge, but Chez Panisse in Berkeley, Aquavit in New York, Sensi at the Bellagio in Las Vegas, and the French Laundry in Yountville, California, are among the establishments that have taken up the challenge. Their offerings include chilled herbal and black teas, infusions, cherry ginger ale, luscious tart juices with a lime or lemon base, and many more. Now when you attend wine/food pairings and other special dining events you don't have to be left out of the food pageant if you choose not to drink.

The options in providing general information about your field of business are very broad. The following questionnaire, though far from exhaustive, is designed to stimulate your thinking and imagination.

Do You “Tell Them Yourself”?

Do you give verbal assurance to customers about the quality of your goods or service?

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

How? What kinds of things do you tell customers?

Is specific evidence given to customers to back up this assessment?

[Examples: “Call me back if you don’t see a result in three days,” “Measure it before and after you put it in a cold wash to make sure it doesn’t shrink.”]

☐ Yes ☐ No

Who usually tells the customer

☐ I tell them ☐ Some employees tell them
☐ Most employees tell them ☐ All employees tell them

Is follow-up done to check new customer satisfaction?

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

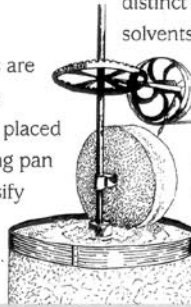
Is follow-up done to check regular customer satisfaction?

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

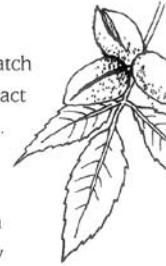
PRODUCTION

The production process begins with nut selection — only edible whole and half nuts are used. Chips and broken pieces are sorted and discarded. To ensure the finest product, exposure to light and air is minimized.

After hand sorting, the nuts are ground into an oatmeal-like consistency. They are then placed into a large cast-iron roasting pan and lightly toasted to intensify their flavors. The temperature is carefully monitored.



Finally, an old-fashioned batch press is used to gently extract the virgin oil from the nuts. Absolutely no heat is used in the pressing. It is a totally natural product with distinct flavor, untainted by solvents or preservatives.



After pressing, the flat “nut cake” or torte that remains is taken from the press and finely ground and sifted into a wholesome nut flour that is out of this world.

WHAT'S THE DIFFERENCE?

	The California Press Nut Oils	Other Nut Oils
finished product	virgin nut oil	refined nut oil
extraction process	lightly toasted & traditionally first pressed	refined - heat and/or solvent extracted
raw product	100% edible nuts, U.S.A. Grown (select halves & wholes)	rejects and inedible nut products as classified by the U.S.D.A.
distinguishing characteristic	intense nut flavor & mouth feel	nut-like flavor
use	a culinary finishing oil for salads, desserts, marinades, baking, etc.	high temperature cooking

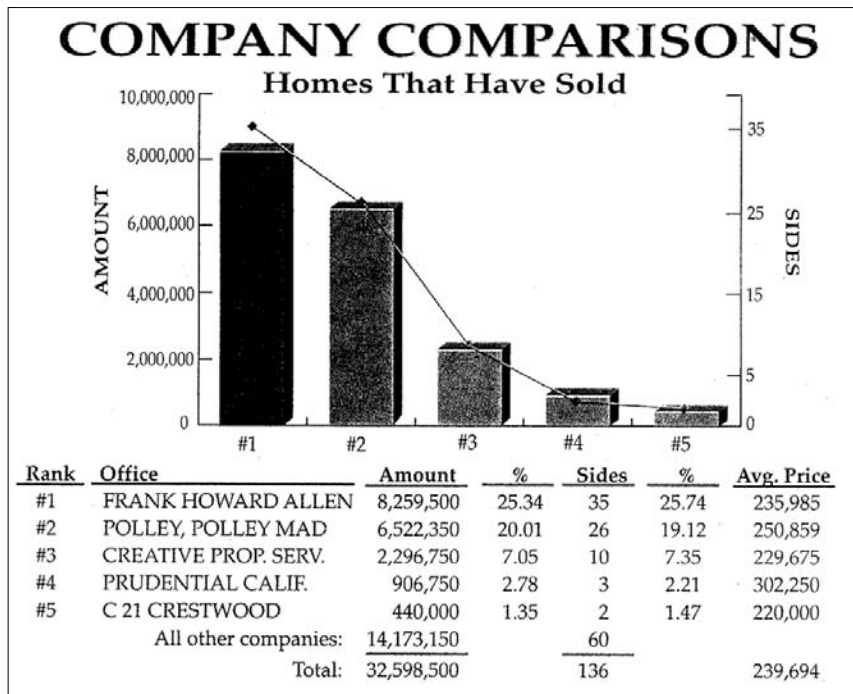
Help Customers Judge for Themselves

The best way to let your customers know your business is good is to provide them with the information they need to judge for themselves. You can give your customers four broad kinds of measures to accomplish this: direct, public, education, and referrals.

Direct Measures

At the simplest level, you can tell your customers about special features of your goods or services. Examples of this technique include:

- a wine store that displays graphically attractive material telling customers how to judge a good wine and then gives them a list of ten “good buys” and asks them to judge how they stack up



PART OF AN INFORMATION SHEET HANDED OUT BY REAL ESTATE AGENTS RANDY AND DIANA ROUSSEAU IN SONOMA COUNTY, CALIFORNIA

- a real estate company that demonstrates with a bar graph that it outsells other companies in the area and places this information in the local real estate guide and in the office
- a brake shop that distributes information sheets explaining the various types of brake jobs it does and how long each should last
- Rollerblade, an in-line skate manufacturer, which lays out a course and brings a van full of skates to announced locations so customers can try before they buy.

These types of direct explanations offer a concise measurement that your customers can easily evaluate. Let's now look at the specifics of how some businesses accomplish this.

Dale Rose has a management consulting firm that uses a testing program called "360 feedback." To give customers and potential customers a measure of the value and effectiveness of the 360 feedback program, Dale did a thorough and independent evaluation of the program as used by other companies, including some of his clients. Dale publishes the "benchmark" study on a regular basis, and it is widely used in his industry by clients and consultants alike. (See www.3dgroup.net/research.html—click on Benchmark study to order a copy.)

The House Cleaners of Memphis, Tennessee, specializes in cleaning apartments when tenants vacate. When its employees finish, they leave a detailed checklist for the landlord, marking off such items as "cleaned venetian blinds," "oiled hinges," and "cleaned refrigerator coils." Many landlords who would never think of cleaning some of these items still feel very good to learn about what they see as an extra service.

In a similar vein, Barbara, a mother of school-aged children, needed to supplement her income and decided to clean houses so she could control her schedule and be home when her children arrived after school. Barbara has evolved a method that makes new customers both knowledgeable and satisfied. Initially, Barbara comes to a potential customer's house to determine, specifically, what is expected of her. She

then sits down with the customer and draws up a short contract that specifically states what will be cleaned, how often, who will provide necessary supplies, and how much this will cost. Then, Barbara comes and cleans everything at the agreed-upon price, even if it takes her a little longer than estimated. She then leaves a note asking the homeowner to call with any problems or adjustments to the arrangement. If she doesn't get a call within a few days, she calls to make absolutely certain that the homeowner is happy with her service and to discuss any changes to the agreement. From then on, she comes as scheduled and keeps to the agreement. Needless to say, Barbara is so valued by the people she works for that she commands a premium price and has a waiting list for her services.

Written agreements are particularly important in many consulting and personal service businesses where customers often don't understand exactly what you do. In addition to defining the specific task to be accomplished (for example, designing a computer program to track sales calls), it is also important to use a contract to tell the customer exactly how you charge. For example, some professionals charge for missed appointments. If you do, letting your clients know in writing as part of your contract about the specifics of your billing practices, such as the fact that "Travel time is charged at one-half the standard hourly rate," or "Phone calls of more than five minutes' duration are charged for a quarter of an hour," is a direct and beneficial way both to give them necessary information about your business and to indicate that your time is valuable.

In the home contracting business, it is very common for the homeowner to keep adding on to the job without realizing that the cost is going up with each addition. The savvy contractor anticipates this by explaining verbally and in writing that anything not included in the original contract requires an extra work order signed by the homeowner.

Typically, a letter of agreement such as this works well:

Sample Letter of Agreement

Ms. Nancy Lowell
Compu-Consultants
24360 9th Street
Berkeley, CA 94710

Ms. Jeanne Pierson
Butterfly Boutique
1234 Mountain Blvd.
Montclair, CA 94725

Dear Ms. Pierson,

The object of this consulting project is for Compu-Consultants to help you, the owner of Butterfly Boutique, to set up an operating financial reporting system that will allow you to travel for periods of up to six months with confidence that the accounting and bookkeeping aspect of your business will be well run while you are gone. This should be accomplished in three months, using no more than 90 hours of consulting time.

The technical specifications of all software necessary to accomplish this goal and a detailed statement of what the software will accomplish are appended to this letter of agreement. Consulting time shall be billed monthly at \$75 per hour. If you agree with these terms and find them satisfactory, please sign under my signature below on both copies; keep one of them for your files and return the other to me.

Sincerely,
Nancy Lowell
President

Public Measures

Another important way your customers gain knowledge about your business is through your creative use of public communication. Public communication can include almost any source of authority, such as a trustworthy media outlet or consumer rating service that your customers know makes judgments that are reliable, objective, and, most important, independent of your control.

For example, when you offer something that has been evaluated favorably in *Consumer Reports* magazine or by any other consumer rating organization, it's good business to post a copy at your place of business. (*Consumer Reports* discourages use of its ratings in ads, for obvious reasons, but their use as part of direct marketing efforts by your business is acceptable.)

Similarly, listing the FDA minimum daily nutrition requirements side by side with the contents of your food products allows your customers to intelligently judge your product. Where relevant, Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) warnings are certainly important for your customers to be aware of so they can evaluate how you have dealt with any potential health risks. For example, if you run a garden shop and know the EPA has listed several types of pesticides as being particularly dangerous, you would be wise to post a notice to this effect along with a list of the substitute products you recommend to accomplish the same pest control purpose.

Here are some other examples:

- “The following is a list of five negative traits associated with religious cults by *Time* magazine—please judge for yourself if our spiritual center has any of them.”
- “Following are the important characteristics of a fine woolen sweater as established by the National Wool Bureau. Notice how our sweaters compare.”

- “*Tennis International* magazine has published the following criteria for a well-strung tennis racket. Please check to see that we meet or exceed all of these requirements.”

Similarly, if you are in the insulation business, you want to let your customers know about the products you sell that work as well as asbestos, without the health risks. One way to do this is to make available the recommendations of a prominent architect associated with the environmental movement. Besides the educational value, your customers will appreciate your awareness of these matters.

Articles in newspapers, magazines, or professional journals that evaluate your business or products also give the public readily available measures of quality they can use for their own purposes and pass along to others. It's important to be aware of such articles and make them available on a regular basis. For example, if you sell appliances, electronic equipment, or hardware, all products that are top rated should be marked accordingly. In addition to placing informative signs on the goods themselves, consider creating a display where you post the actual reviews and articles commenting objectively (and ideally, favorably) on the products you sell.

The Internet has a plethora of sites that evaluate products and services. If you have a website, you can add a page that has evaluations of the products you sell. Even better, you can provide a page of links to other sites that provide evaluations and measurement tools.

The Industry Standard, a former magazine on the Internet economy, ran a Secret Shopper column that rated websites for accuracy. In one instance, the Secret Shopper ordered a dozen clothing products from online stores in order to compare the actual color of the clothing with the Web graphic examples. If your company obtained a good rating, it would be worth noting publicly.

The Sonoma Land Trust in Santa Rosa, California, has devised a Partners in Nature program with local business owners. As part of helping participating businesses market their services, the land trust

provides a logo that the businesses can use to show their commitment to land protection and conservation. The partners' websites are linked to the land trust website, and they are recognized at special events and in the media.

Doing the Right Thing

Tim O'Reilly, founder of online technological publisher O'Reilly Media Inc., has some priceless experience in combining altruism and marketing.

His thoughts:

"As Mark Twain said, "Always do right. You will gratify some people and astonish the rest." Volunteering, giving away product to those who can't afford it, is great marketing as well as the right thing to do.

"For example, at O'Reilly, we've long donated lots of books to people in Eastern Europe, Africa, and other developing countries. They can't afford to buy books, but one day they might. And meanwhile, we're doing some good.

"Similarly, we've been proactive in supplying text-only versions of our books to the blind."

Word about this kind of social spiritedness gets around. And it's very sweet that it pays off in reputation even when you're doing it just because it's the right thing. Of course, this has to be sincere. People have good noses for when you're just posturing. The point is to realize that there really is virtue behind effective marketing without advertising.

Don't assume that providing convenient ways for customers to measure the quality of your goods and services may work well for some types of businesses but not for yours. For example, even dentists—hardly a group that normally engages in creative marketing—are sometimes evaluated. A San Francisco Bay area publication, *Consumer Checkbook*, sent a questionnaire to thousands of Bay Area citizens and asked them to rate their dentists. Two of the questions were "My dentist explains what

How Customers Can Evaluate Your Business

My business provides clear verbal measurements of product/service effectiveness.

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

My business provides training classes to new customers and prospects.

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

My business provides clear written measurements of product/service effectiveness.

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

We offer a:

- | | |
|--|--|
| ☐ Brochure | ☐ Specification sheet |
| ☐ Checklist | ☐ Contract |
| ☐ Informative label | ☐ Questionnaire |
| ☐ Instructions | ☐ Evaluation form |
| ☐ Worksheet | ☐ Physical measurement |
| ☐ Website | ☐ Other online information
(survey, newsletter, and so on) |

We have:

- ☐ Displays/models
- ☐ Photos of successful work
- ☐ Samples/examples
- ☐ Other evidence of quality

he/she is doing” and “My dentist encourages patients to look at their own dental files.” The magazine published the tabulated results, which contained information on costs, dental specialty, and other matters. One Palo Alto dentist, Daniel Armistead, who was rated at or near the top in all important categories, displays this rating in his waiting room, so that the majority of his customers who don’t subscribe to *Consumer Checkbook* will know how he stacks up.

A dentist who isn’t in a community where ratings are published can display articles and other information explaining new and improved techniques for teeth and gum care. This gives the patients valuable information about state-of-the-art dental care and helps them understand that they are being cared for by a person who prides herself in keeping up with developments in her field.

In The Natural Bedroom in San Francisco, California, mail order catalogue customers are informed that their woolen products are “scrupulously cleaned and created without bleaches, formaldehydes, dyes or animal cruelty by more than 50 ranchers.” Along with other information about the important attributes of wool, they include the results of a study conducted by two leading European institutes that confirms wool’s superior comfort (under both warm and cool sleeping conditions, wool-fill wicks away body moisture better than down, cotton, or synthetic fibers) and demonstrating the lowering of heart rate, decrease in humidity, and regulation of body temperature.

Offering customers something tangible is a good marketing strategy and can be another creative way to allow them to measure the quality of your goods and services. Pharmacies can provide charts that compare cost and potency of generic and branded medicines. This not only allows customers to save money, but also lets them know that the pharmacy is concerned with more than just its own bottom line. For businesses that sell things by weight, a cardboard slide rule that conveniently allows customers to compare volume to cost, or distance to weight, can be a wonderfully helpful device. It is both a useful tool and a reminder that the store wants to help customers get a good deal.

Nolo, the publisher of this book, does an impressive job of giving out information in a variety of ways, particularly at its website, which contains free legal information for consumers.

Educational Measures

All the measures discussed in this chapter to communicate information to your customers and clients are, in a broad sense, educational. Here we focus on more traditional “educational” avenues: classes and workshops.

If you teach popular classes, you have a great marketing advantage over similar businesses because you have an enormous opportunity to communicate directly with both customers and interested prospective customers. And if you teach at a well-known school, it gives both you and, by extension, your business a valuable credential.

Most community college and university extension course catalogues include a wide array of courses in which businesspeople teach the public about their fields. The courses can generate clients and personal recommendations based on what the student learned. For example, a college extension catalogue that recently came our way lists the following evening courses, which are really just introductions to new business fields:

- Graphic Design for the Internet
- Computer Ergonomics
- Mediating Business Disputes
- Ocean Kayaking
- Video on the Internet
- Designing Public Flower Arrangements
- Veterinarian Support Businesses
- Retail Sales on eBay.

Classes can also directly expose potential customers to your product. For example, auto dealers often lend cars to driver training classes, and

customers are often exposed to computers, laser printers, and other high-tech equipment through training classes. Indeed, this approach is so successful that the Apple Computer company bases much of its corporate marketing effort around making gifts and loans of computers and software to schools and nonprofit groups. Similarly, one of the reasons that Lincoln and Victor became the dominant names in the welding business was because they supplied trade schools with their equipment.

Referrals

The opinion of people in your field—professional peers, leaders in the field, knowledgeable suppliers, key employees, or former students and apprentices—can make a huge difference to a successful personal recommendation marketing campaign.

In the small business context, one of the best references you can obtain for a service you offer is to send a customer to a respected peer for a second opinion or critical evaluation. For example, an architect might send a client to a solar expert for confirmation that his design is, in fact, solar efficient. A builder working in an area of earthquake risks can refer potential customers to a soils expert or structural engineer to review her plans.

The point is that it is extremely important, especially in service businesses, that you take the time to know others in your field and related fields. As they come to respect and trust you (and vice versa), there will be all sorts of ways you can help each other, one of which is to provide validation for each other's goods and services.

The Pickle Family Circus of San Francisco found an ingenious way to involve a former colleague. One of the clowns who helped found the circus in the early 1970s moved to New York and became a widely recognized performer. He even received a very prestigious MacArthur Foundation Award. In a well-publicized homecoming gala fundraiser, the circus was able to remind everyone that it is an important source of theatrical talent and an exciting place to be.

Similarly, a good strategy for a dance school would be to have a top student perform at a party held by a board member of an important ballet company.

Whenever we think of apprentices, Hal Howard comes to mind. Hal, a floor sander, has trained numerous assistants throughout the years, passing along his expertise and love of fine craftsmanship. Now, when Hal's apprentices have jobs that are technically too difficult for them, they refer those customers to their "master." If you have been involved with apprentices, let them know if you are available to back them up or help with complicated jobs.

Dear Friends and Associates,

I am writing to introduce you to a Naturopathic Doctor in Sebastopol. Michael Lipelt has recently opened a practice at 523 S. Main Street in downtown Sebastopol. The very tastefully redecorated office is welcoming as soon as you walk in the door.

I have been a patient of Dr. Lipelt since he first opened and am pleased to recommend him to you. Formerly a dentist in Santa Rosa, Dr. Lipelt returned to school and received extensive education in both acupuncture and Naturopathic medicine. His focus is on wellness and prevention.

In addition to being highly trained and skilled, Dr. Lipelt takes the time to listen and to get to know you and your history -- a trait I find very important in a health care provider. He offers a free introductory consultation, so you can see for yourself! An Open House with music, wine and refreshments will be held on Friday, May 17 from 4:30 to 7:00 PM.

Please review the brochure sent with this letter to learn more specifics about Dr. Lipelt's practice. Then call him for that free consultation -- and tell him I sent you.

Sincerely,



Marty Roberts

Referrals

My business is:

by:

KNOWN

RESPECTED

RECOMMENDED

Others in the same business

☐☐☐

Some

☐☐☐

Most

Locals in the same business

☐☐☐

Some

☐☐☐

Most

Others in closely related businesses

☐☐☐

Some

☐☐☐

Most

Leaders in my business

☐☐☐

Some

☐☐☐

Most

Students and former employees

☐☐☐

Some

☐☐☐

Most

Giving Customers Authority for Your Claims

While it can be very effective for you to communicate your pride in your work or product to your customers directly, it is usually even more effective to have someone else do it for you. There are many ways you can provide the authority of others to help customers realize that your product or service is of high quality.

Chances are you already use some of these techniques and are familiar with others. For example, displaying diplomas, awards, and certificates of course completion are traditional ways to let clients and customers know that you have the “seal of approval” of the educational or licensing institutions in your field. Similarly, wine bottles often have an “appellation”; marmalades and mustards often tell us they won “First Prize in the Cloverdale Fair”; film posters and book jackets tell us about awards won and display favorable critics’ comments; and electrical products have the “Underwriter’s Labs Seal of Approval.” Web pages may note that they’ve been named “One of the top 5 Yahoo sites on the Net.” If you are an author or small publisher, a high rating by readers on Amazon.com can be useful in your marketing.

Ways to use third-party testimony to tell your customers that you do a good job are almost limitless. Even the smallest business should be able to create a healthy range of this type of information. For example, in some businesses such as consulting, graphics, interior design, and advertising, it is customary to list one’s clients in a portfolio. This idea can be carried further by not only presenting a bare list, but including descriptions of each client, as well as quotes from them about your business. It is also a good idea to give special potential clients the phone number of an existing client (with permission, of course) to call for more information about your work, as long as you don’t overdo it. Architects, interior designers, graphic artists, and landscapers are among the businesses that can offer portfolios of their work along with pictures of happy clients and letters of appreciation.

Many retail businesses display letters from enthusiastic customers, and some enlarge letters of special interest. For example, if a local photocopy store completes a huge rush job for a popular local business or a political figure and receives a note of thanks, it makes sense to display it on the bulletin board along with information about the speed and precision of its service. If you adopt this technique, however, be sure all letters and commendations are relatively recent and are changed often. Your regular customers won't be impressed the 37th time they see the same faded letter. Oh, and one more thing: Take the trouble to display all materials as nicely as possible. If you simply tape a review or commendation to a window or wall, you tell your customers that you have little imagination and don't value the accolade highly enough to present it well. A far better approach is to take all you want to display to a local framing shop and have them presented nicely.

A Real Rain Check

Michael had lunch on a rainy day at a classic Tokyo restaurant, Umaya. As he left, in the small folder with the receipt, was a "rain check" for each of the people in his party. A real "rain check" good for a future 10% discount on lunch ... a thank you for coming out to a meal in the rain.

The problem with marketing for a restaurant is that nearly everything about a restaurant experience must be perfect and anything can ruin it. A brilliant marketing change at a restaurant can see sales increase after six months and a mistake can show up in reduced sales in less than two months. Most good restaurants survive on word of mouth recommendations.

Upscale restaurants are always outdoing themselves to show concern for their delicate, precious clients. But few can match what Michael experienced in Japan. This "rain check" was a stroke of genius on top of all the other elements of superb customer care. To tell a client how much you appreciate something the customer did (like coming out in the rain) will invariably be taken as sincere.

Peter Martin, a Santa Cruz, California, real estate broker, makes extensive use of statements from satisfied customers. When a customer compliments Martin after a job is done, Martin asks her to put the compliments in writing, on letterhead if possible. “It’s important to ask clients when the good service they’ve received is fresh in their minds,” he says. Martin sends prospective clients and friends well-designed and attractively printed brochures containing excerpts from the letters. The brochures, which are inexpensive to produce, serve the dual purpose of telling prospective clients about him and answering friends who ask, “What can we say about you?”

Some businesses also display photos of local or national celebrities who patronize their business. If you do this, pay particular attention to both the quality of these photos and what they communicate to the viewer. While a photo of a top bike racer consulting on the repair of his bike at a local bike repair shop would be very effective, a 15-year-old picture of a former football player eating in a restaurant may subtly tell the customer that the restaurant is as out of date as the quarterback.

Another good approach to validating your expertise is to write a series of articles about your specialty or contact publications and freelance writers to see if they are interested in telling your story for you. In almost every business or field of specialization, there are newsletters, journals, or trade magazines that accept such articles. Once a favorable article is published about your innovative law practice, lawn repair service, or language school, distribute reprints to your customers and have the original enlarged for display. Also, if you can, arrange to be interviewed on a local radio show, and have a friend photograph your appearance and display it at your business, or use it in your brochure. Newspaper articles about your business are, of course, an easy thing to display. Again, however, make sure that all material of this sort is reasonably up to date. People will be a lot more interested in the fact that you appeared on the Tonight Show last month than the Merv Griffin Show in 1980.

Awards and displays explaining them can often be an authoritative way to tell your customers that others think well of you. For example, the Daily Scoop, a coffee and ice cream shop near our office, displays a newspaper article selecting it as the store with the best cafe latte in San Francisco. Written on the glass frame is “Chosen Number 1.” Made to Order, the very successful delicatessen in Berkeley, California, we referred to in the last chapter, let its customers know that its pesto was chosen Number 1 in Northern California by a well-known newspaper by enlarging the article, framing it with bright colored cardboard, and putting it in the window with ribbons. After a month, the display was taken down and replaced with a list of new products. Made to Order, which regularly wins prizes and receives favorable reviews and awards, turns each into an exciting event, but never tries to milk any particular accolade or prize too long.

One of the most ingenious examples of giving customers positive information about a business was Zoah’s Free Raffle Event. This popular Japanese luncheon spot in San Francisco opened during the late ’70s and lasted into the early 1990s, catering to businesspeople. Zoah’s asked each customer to present a business card to enter its annual raffle. Many hundreds did. Zoah’s then awarded over 60 small but nice prizes (a beer mug or Japanese cookbook, for example). The name of each winner and his business was written carefully on long sheets of paper underneath his prize and posted on the restaurant wall. Zoah’s crossed out the winners’ names with light-colored ink when they claimed their prizes. The result, of course, is that all the restaurants’ many customers, and even many people who work in the neighborhood who had never been to the restaurant, heard about the winner’s names. Indeed, several prize winners reported being called by a number of friends telling them of their good fortune. Of course, in running this little event, Zoah’s not only provided fun and prizes for its customers, but the roster of winners posted on the wall allowed others to see how many prominent and interesting people patronized their restaurant.

Unfortunately, Zoah's didn't do an adequate job of keeping the place clean, and Japanese food is known for its ultracleanliness. Word got out, and Zoah's early marketing could not overcome the effects.

Customer Referrals

I offer new customers the names and phone numbers of other customers.

☐ SOMETIMES ☐ USUALLY

I refer customers to others for second opinions or evaluations.

☐ SOMETIMES ☐ USUALLY

I have available:

- ☐ Printed lists of customer referrals
- ☐ Letters from satisfied customers
- ☐ Evidence of awards or certificates for my product
- ☐ Newsletter with customer comments

I display:

- ☐ Articles
- ☐ Photos of customers enjoying my product or service
- ☐ Certificates and awards
- ☐ Any other evidence of accomplishments

Helping Customers Find You

Finding Your Business.....	191
Convenience of Access	194
Signs	198
Telephone Accessibility	198
Yellow Pages Listings.....	199
Phone Technology.....	201
Listing Your Services Creatively and Widely.....	207
Getting Referrals From People in Related Fields.....	210
Trade Shows and Conferences.....	213

Having the best product or service in your area won't do you any good if potential customers can't find you. If you run a small animal hospital, how does a person whose cat gets violently ill in the middle of the night find you? If you fix Apple computers, how does a writer with a balky Macintosh and an unforgiving editor get your phone number in a hurry? If you operate a language school to teach English as a second language, how do potential customers who may not know enough English to use traditional listing services—such as the phone book—locate you?

To begin with, ask yourself two questions. The first is obvious: Do the maximum possible number of potential customers know how to find your business? Depending on what kind of business you own, the second question can be far more subtle: Assuming a potential customer knows where you are, can he actually get to your goods and services with reasonable ease?

Answering these important questions can involve everything from thinking about your business name, your product packaging, the signs on your building and vehicles, and the wording on your business cards and flyers, to deciding to distribute a humorous T-shirt or poster to your good customers. It also involves determining whether or not you are listed in the appropriate and logical places—for example, in the yellow pages, Internet search engines, and all appropriate professional reference manuals or with the Chamber of Commerce.

At this point, you may be thinking about skimming or skipping this chapter; after all, if you have been in business for a while, you probably believe that you have already dealt with all the obvious accessibility issues. It is our observation that many established and otherwise efficient businesses have a lot of room to improve in this area. And don't dismiss concerns about accessibility because yours isn't a retail business. Even if you only have a relatively few loyal clients, as is true of many wholesalers and small consulting businesses, it is imperative for you to attract new

ones if your business is to thrive. To do this, you must make it easy for new people to find you.

For example, suppose a visitor from another country reads an article you wrote in a trade journal about how to efficiently use variable speed electric motors in generators, and asks the State Department for an introduction. You will never meet the person if you can't be found fairly easily. Similarly, imagine the former spouse of a loyal customer who now has a thriving business of her own and needs the services of your employee benefits consulting business but doesn't want to communicate with her ex-spouse—will she be able to find you on her own? What if someone from your college hears from a former professor that you are a hot-shot Web page designer; will he find you easily, or give up in frustration?

Finding Your Business

Particularly for retail businesses, letting potential customers know where your business is located is extremely important. Often, businesses use well-known landmarks to help clients find and remember their location. Such slogans as “Bridgeman's, across from the main entrance to the University of Minnesota,” or “Matthews, Top of the Hill, Daly City,” can be very helpful for the new customer. Think about how landmarks can help you. For example, if your knife sharpening shop happens to be at the crest of the hill on Main Street, your business cards, yellow page listing, or delivery truck might say “Main Street Saw & Knife Shop—Get an edge at the Top of the Hill.” This approach may be corny, but if it's effective, so what?

Your business name can also be an important tool. The “24-Hour Pet Emergency Clinic” clearly lets people know that they can get help in the middle of the night and is a far better name than “Miller Veterinary Clinic” when it comes to promoting your business. Similarly, the “Cosmetic Dentistry Clinic” tells potential customers what you

specialize in. Of course, business names can serve a number of other valuable purposes, but in choosing or changing a name don't overlook the potential in terms of helping customers find you.

Never assume that customers will find you easily—or at all—once they get your address from the phone book. How many times have you looked for someone's office or shop a little longer than you wished to? Have you ever quit in disgust? Probably, most of the time you kept searching until you found your elusive quarry, but weren't in the best of moods when you finally arrived. Enough said, we hope. You don't want new customers to struggle to find you and to pass the word that you are “really out of the way” or “impossible to find at night.”

Normally, it is fairly easy to eliminate problems people have in finding you even if your location is out of the way. For example, Santa Rosa Dodge capitalizes on the fact it is difficult to find through its yellow pages listing, “Hardest Place in Town to Find ... But Worth It!” and then prints a map so customers can in fact easily locate it. It is an excellent practice for businesses to print maps in the yellow pages as well as on any flyers or brochures. If you are hard to find, or if you draw customers from out of town, it behooves you to do this.

In some instances, you may want to identify your global coordinates, because so many people have GPS Ground Positioning Satellite devices. In New York, the Adirondacks Chamber of Commerce (www.adrkmts.com).

Nightly Specials EARLY BIRD Mon.-Thurs. 3-5:45pm 20 Choices \$8.95 - \$11.95 1145 S.E. P.S.L. Blvd. Rivergate Plaza Port St. Lucie, FL 34952 (between Publix & Bealls Outlet) Open Lunch & Dinner www.ruffino's.net (772) 335-2988  Map Highway 1 Port St. Lucie Blvd. 772-344-3907	RUFFINO'S <i>Italian Restaurant & Pizzeria</i> 1145 S.E. P.S.L. Blvd. Rivergate Plaza Port St. Lucie, FL 34952 (16 Years Same Location) (772) 335-2988 We Deliver Voted #1 in St. Lucie County	Appetizers Mozz & Tom - Mozz-Stix's Clams Casino or Oregana Fried Calamari-Bruschetta Cold Antipasto - Scungilli Salad Zuppa Di Mussels or Clams Shrimp Cocktail Sauteed Broccoli Bruschetta-Garlic Bread Tossed Salad Seafood Shrimp Fradivolo or Marinara Shrimp Scampi or Parmigiana Shrimp Francese or Fried Shrimp Monachina Calamari or Scungilli Marinara Zuppa Di Clams or Mussels Seafood Pescatore From the Pizza Oven Sicilian & Neapolitan White & Vegetable Pizza Stuffed Pizza Calzone & Stromboli Sausage Roll & Heroes Chicken & Veal Veal or Chicken Parmigiana Veal or Chicken Francese Veal or Chicken Marsala Chicken Galante or Ala Panna Chicken Scarpariello or Chicken Cacciatore Chicken or Veal Pizzada Veal Sorrentina Veal or Chicken Picatta Pasta Spaghetti & Meatballs Spaghetti Carbonara Ziti w/ Broccoli Linguini w/Clam Sauce Tortellini Meat Sauce Penne Bolognese Fettuccine Alfredo Rigatoni Vodka Sauce Lasagna or Manicotti Stuffed Shells or Ravioli Homemade Desserts And Much More
---	--	--

com/snowmobiling/GPS.htm) publishes the GPS location of local businesses. The Alpine Meadow Chalets are at 18T 0550625 4818168.

Websites are an ideal spot for business owners to explain in words and graphics how potential customers can find them. And many businesses now use this opportunity to good advantage. Two businesses that provide clear and concise online directions at the click of a button are Lake Union Café in Seattle, Washington, at www.lakeunioncafe.com and Citrus Café in Tustin, California, at www.citruscafe.com.

Accessibility includes many obvious things beyond telling people where you are located, such as making sure your working hours are posted at your place of business and that you keep to those times. Being unpredictable is a rapid way to erode customer trust. Imagine how you would feel if you got up early on a Saturday morning, packed up the car for a long-awaited ski trip and, arriving at the tire chain rental store promptly at eight, no one was there, even though the sign clearly says, “Open at 8:00.” You get a cup of coffee and return at 8:30, and still no one is there. You pace around, trying to rationalize traveling without chains, when finally at 8:45 someone comes to open up. If you have a choice, you probably won’t ever again patronize that business and certainly won’t recommend it to fellow ski buffs.

A number of retail businesses in all sorts of fields, from books to baby clothes, have found that staying open longer hours, especially at times when most people are not working, results in more than enough sales to cover the increased overhead costs. Your customers will tell others that there is one place in town where you can buy a bridal gown, a lawnmower, or a guppy on Tuesday evening or Sunday afternoon. Many businesses that have profitably extended their hours have done so by hiring reasonably priced part-time Sunday and evening help. Even professionals and others who traditionally work 9 to 5 should consider keeping their businesses open longer hours, or at least making some services available during times when others in their field are closed.

Using modern communications equipment creatively often makes it possible to offer extended access to at least some services at a reasonable cost. For example, one attorney we know of put a small advertisement in the phone book emphasizing that his office took messages 24 hours a day from people who had suffered personal injuries. He signed up over 30 new cases within a few months. Similarly, some dentists and many therapists are now taking evening appointments, and one friend very successfully offers 24-hour emergency dental care for his patients.

Having a website can be very helpful in directing your customers to your business. A website can provide vivid and accurate directions, maps, GPS coordinates, and details about parking. As the Internet becomes increasingly connected with mobile phones, more and more people check a business's website to find its geographic location.

Convenience of Access

You probably know businesses that are easy to find, but located where parking is such a problem that you rarely go there. Indeed, shopping centers, which offer free convenient parking, grew in large part because shoppers got fed up with driving around the block. Parking should be seen as an integral part of access to your business. Unless you are in a shopping center, are lucky enough to have plenty of parking, or depend entirely on walk-by traffic (such as a gift shop in a hotel), you should go to great lengths to see that parking is reasonably available.

If parking is a potential problem for your customers, you should take affirmative steps to help them locate what is available. The fact that most businesses don't bother to do this is even more reason for you to set yourself apart by going out of your way to help your customers.

Some creative businesses offer validated parking privileges at nearby lots, give out maps showing where parking spaces in their neighborhood are most likely to be found, or print maps with public transit lines clearly marked. All of these are good ideas. The important thing is that

you analyze the parking needs of your customers and try to meet them, even if doing so costs you a little extra.

For example, the Counseling Center in downtown Westwood, California, is in a neighborhood with very difficult parking, including 4 p.m. tow-away zones and half-hour meters. It printed a map showing all the various parking zones, including free spaces, metered ones, and parking garages, within a four-block radius. It's been very popular with customers.

The Franz Valley Gardens in Calistoga, California, specializes in growing and introducing new and unusual plants. It turned a huge problem with accessibility into a flourishing business. The nursery is small and remote and has limited parking, so it instituted a shop-by-mail program for clients. In addition, it sends out a newsletter listing the local Farmers' Markets where you can purchase its plants; it also has a display garden of ornamental grasses and various plants which may be seen by appointment. When the items that you order arrive, the nursery calls and sets up a mutually agreeable delivery time or a time when you can pick them up at the nursery if you wish.

Providing parking information isn't the only way to get your product and your customers together. Indeed, it may make sense to reverse the normal process and take the product to the customer. Home delivery, of course, is a tradition in a few businesses, such as pizza and Chinese restaurants. Other businesses, especially service ones, make house calls but often charge a lot to do it. Certainly, many businesses could gain customer trust and expand their business by flouting tradition and offering free or low-cost deliveries and service calls.

This raises an important point: Providing accessibility to your customers at their homes or businesses should never mean punishing them by charging outrageously for the service. Take stock of your business. If offering low-cost or free home delivery would increase sales, consider buying a clean second-hand pickup, hiring a retired truck driver at a reasonable rate, and of course purchasing the necessary insurance.

This expense shouldn't be huge and may be more than offset by the improvement in sales.

Here are some examples of interesting solutions to the problem of getting product and customer together:

- The Fit Lab, a clean, bright, well-staffed exercise facility with branches in Albany and Oakland, California, fairly bubbles over with innovative marketing without advertising techniques. One of its best is to open at least part of the day on major holidays such as Christmas, Thanksgiving, and Easter. You are just bound to brag about a gym that cares enough about your well-being to let you exercise on the days when you eat the most. Fit Lab also has brochures available in a rack outside its door. Curious passers-by, who can see all the exercise equipment through the sparkling window-front, can get more information instantly without going in. This not only is good after hours, but also allows people to "browse" without risking a hard sell (which they wouldn't get anyway).
- Hansen's Mill of Kromforsh, Sweden, runs a portable sawmill operation and serves rural customers by milling logs right on their property. When the tree feller finishes his job, Olaf and his brother Torbjorn level a spot, set up their equipment and start to work, milling lumber to the customer's specifications. It's not only convenient for the customer, but extremely satisfying for her to build a deck or outbuilding using lumber from her own land.
- A masseuse might bring her specially designed chair and magic hands to your workplace, offering 15-minute neck and shoulder massages for a minimum of four people. What better Friday afternoon bonus?
- Many small office, auto, and hardware supply stores have found that they can successfully compete with large discount warehouses by emphasizing fast delivery service.
- Many drugstores will make deliveries when necessary, especially to new mothers or the elderly and, in an emergency, will meet you at the drugstore at any hour.

- A young friend of ours has many auto repair customers who live in rather remote areas. He customized his truck so he could do many repairs at their homes, often saving them costly towing charges and inconvenience.
- Bookstores that allow customers to order current titles over the phone or online and ship the same day are providing a service to the elderly and handicapped as well as researchers and other busy customers.
- Tilley Endurables makes the super-sturdy, squashable, rain- and mildew-resistant, wide-brimmed cotton duck hat that floats and comes with a forever guarantee—“Put it in your will.” It also sports a “Brag Tag” in the crown of the hat for the owner to give people who inquire about the hat.
- The small business owner who refinishes clients’ bathroom fixtures in their homes is certain to benefit from personal recommendations. In the same vein is the mobile dog grooming and bathing service, which is an especially great boon for owners of large dogs.
- A lawyer or tax preparer who makes house calls at no extra charge to deal with the problems of the ill and elderly opens up a whole new market for herself.
- The Mad Matter in Port Townsend, Washington, is a framing business whose owner brings her mat and frame samples to the clients’ homes for truly individualized service.

A business that operates online offers additional accessibility. See Chapter 11.



Our Guarantee

If you ever find the workmanship or materials to be less than the best, your money will be refunded. If your (unbleached) Tilley Hat ever wears out, we'll replace it free! Bring it to any store that sells the Hat and you'll be given a new one.

Lastly, in the crown of your Hat is a “Brag Tag”. It could get you into trouble! Open it up and you'll see what we mean! When you run out of them, phone us and we'll send you more at no charge.

Enjoy your Tilley!
Pass it on!

Alley Tilley

Signs

Drive down any commercial street in America and look at the signs. How many do you like? How many do you hate? If you are like most people, the ones you are attracted to are probably a distinct minority.

What makes a good sign? There is no one answer. While many people hate neon, it can be very effective in some circumstances. Other materials and styles of typefaces can be effective or not depending on how they are used. Our bias is toward signs that are simple and easy to read and communicate the essence of the particular business.

For example, the Pacific Basin School of Textile Arts flies an exquisite woven flag from the front of its building, telling thousands of people who pass on the busy road more about the business than a hundred conventional signs ever could. Similarly, we know of several locksmiths who use large cut-out wooden keys to quickly alert passers-by to the nature of their business.

The Internet has its own kind of signs. Businesses that rely on the Internet for a good part of their business should invest in domain names (their online addresses) that describe their business (such as Salli's Shrinedesign.com) and are very easy to remember. Other businesses may, in effect, put up signs pointing to your online site; if they think people would be interested in it, they may link their site to yours, allowing browsers to jump to your site almost instantly. More about this in Chapter 11, Marketing on the Internet.

Telephone Accessibility

For any small business, the telephone is a very important tool; your number should be listed in all places a customer is likely to look. This is especially crucial for service businesses and others who do a large part of their business by phone.

People continue to use yellow pages even with widespread Internet availability. The *Wall Street Journal* in January 2007 reports that 61% of people still look in the printed yellow pages when looking for a local business. Thirteen percent use Internet search engines and 7% use online yellow pages.

Yellow Pages Listings

An independent study done for Pacific Telephone determined that 95% of the people interviewed found the yellow pages helpful and 78% of them had contacted a firm located there. One-half of those in the study made a purchase or used a service as a result of their inquiry.

Some businesses, however, waste their money having a listing or display ad in the yellow pages and similar books. For instance, while escort services, 24-hour plumbers, and bail bondsmen depend almost entirely on customers who see their yellow pages listing, industrial broom suppliers, nonprofit trade organizations, artists, and economic research firms typically get few if any new customers from this source.

Van Entriken is an example of a businessperson who found advertising in the yellow pages to be ineffective. The owner of an interior design business in Reno, Nevada, he laments that “all that ever came to me from my yellow pages listing was a knowledge of the street layout of the city.” This knowledge came about the hard way, when homeowners who found his yellow pages listing under Interior Designers invited him over for an estimate as an excuse to get a free consultation.

If you question whether the yellow pages are appropriate for your business, it's helpful to see what others in your field have decided. If lots of similar businesses use listings, it's probably wise to give it a try. If you find only a few listings, check old directories, which can usually be found in public libraries, to see if others in the field have tried listing. If you notice people trying it at various times and then dropping it, that's an important clue that it probably won't work for you.

**TIP**

Your employees should be able to give directions to your business. How many times have you called for directions and been told “I don’t know I don’t live around here” or heard someone shout across the room to Jane or Jim for help? Many people still call an office or small store for directions. Make sure that whoever answers the phone can give excellent directions from various parts of the city or county, including public transportation options.

Many businesses fall under more than one yellow pages category. For example, a word processing service can be found under that title as well as under “Secretarial Services” and even “Typing.” When you check the yellow pages, it is a reasonable assumption that if all large displays or boldface listings are in only one category, this is where customers look most often. Spending money to appear in a related category will probably be a waste unless you are in a rapidly changing field featuring new terminology. For example, a number of years ago computer sales and service were listed under “data processing.” The first businesses to escape from this category and be listed under “computers” did very well.

If you decide that your business will benefit from more than a listing and want to pay for a display ad, the question of ad size (and price) is important. The best guideline is to start at a price level you can afford even if the ad doesn’t generate any business at all. No response would naturally be painful, but if you’ve been cautious it won’t put a financial strain on your business, forcing you to work longer hours or significantly increase your debt. If you do get a positive response, you can always increase your display size next year, or even sooner in directories for adjacent geographic areas.

If you do decide that a display ad makes sense for your business, keep in mind certain considerations:

- **Emphasize your specialties.** Describe goods and services that distinguish you from others in your field. One charter boat company we know originally omitted the fact that it had sailboats for hire, even though it was the only company in the yellow pages that offered this service (others were power boat charterers). A change in the display ad copy increased business by 20%.
- **Put in as much access information as you can.** Include credit cards you accept, hours of operation, whether you respond to calls at night or on weekends (businesses that do so usually do particularly well in the yellow pages), whether you deliver (another big plus in this kind of listing), and, of course, detailed instructions about how to find you and your website address.
- **Don't be cutesy or try to win a graphic design award.** Information that answers customers' questions as clearly as possible is what counts. Also, if your business has been in existence a long time or has just won an award, mention it briefly. Customers who don't know you will appreciate the reassurance provided by this information.

Phone Technology

Because of rapid technological change, it is worthwhile to review your telephone-related marketing needs at regular intervals. While staying current isn't always cheap, failing to do so often undermines customer confidence in your business. As a general rule, anything that significantly improves the way your customers can reach your business is worth the money.

A back-up telephone answering machine or voicemail service is essential so you can be accessible even when you aren't there. Calling a business and having no one answer turns customers off. We recently called a large drugstore in our area and the phone just rang and rang. Needless to say, the drugstore that gave its address and hours of operation got our business. We are continually surprised at businesses

that let the phone ring and ring, passing up a great opportunity to provide important information to potential customers. Letting the phone ring also raises the question in potential customers' minds that if you are that remiss about the phone, what about the rest of your business?

When you use an answering machine or voicemail service, let people know approximately when you will be returning their call. If you are out of town, say so, and have some system for dealing with calls during that time.



TIP

Answering Machine and Voicemail Rules:

- Keep your message short. By now everyone knows how to use the machines and doesn't want a long explanation before getting a chance to speak. Something like, "Hello, this is Tandy Belew Graphic Designs. Please leave a message of any length, and I'll get back to you within 24 hours. Thanks," is all you need.
- If you have an old-fashioned answering machine that cuts off after a certain number of seconds, throw it out and buy one that will let callers talk as long as they wish.
- If you tell callers when you will be back, keep the message current. "I'll be out Tuesday afternoon" sounds dumb on Thursday.
- Get the best quality machine and fix it or replace it immediately if it breaks. Answering machines generally rank as cost-effective investments.
- If you have voicemail with multiple mail boxes, say so immediately so callers know what to listen for.
- Give your Internet address.

Here are a few more useful phone techniques:

- Three-way calling, which allows you to connect an incoming customer's call with someone at another location so that all three of you can talk, is available in many parts of the country. This service is essential for lawyers, consultants, accountants, and others who regularly must communicate with more than one person at a time.
- “800” and “888” numbers, which let your customers call you at no expense to them, may be absolutely necessary if you take phone orders. If you are too small to contract for your own service, there are “800” residential services.
- Credit card billing for telephone sales is a growing practice. It offers many types of retailers and others the opportunity to send catalogues to their good customers, take orders over the phone, and send out the product via UPS or other delivery service the same day.
- Worldwide telex services are now available for anyone with a computer and modem to attach to a telephone.
- Fax machines have become standard in most businesses. A separate line is often a necessity, as may be 24-hour high-speed automated transmission.

For many businesses, the telephone is the primary access point people have with you. It's very irritating to call a business and be transferred by the person who answers the phone to someone else without even a “one moment, please.” Even worse is just being put on hold without permission. This is especially annoying when you are calling long distance. If you ask for someone or a department and then hear nothing but a click, you may not be sure whether you've been transferred, put on hold, or cut off. Not a great beginning for your contact with a company.

Gethuman.com is a consumer advocacy group that rates companies as to how they use the phone to serve consumers. Of the 500 large American companies rated, almost 85% flunked the evaluation, with only nine companies receiving an A.

The one thing worse is to get trapped in a telephone branching system, the kind that says: “If you want our hours press 1, if you want sales press 2,” and so on, but never gets you to the place you want or gets you to the wrong place. Nearly every American can tell a story about a terrible telephone branching experience.

If you have a telephone branching system make sure it works easily for the customer and that they can reach a human. If your system doesn’t allow the user to accomplish tasks faster than talking with a human, don’t offer it.

The most important consideration is always your customer, not your convenience. Consider the client who is hard of hearing, a stroke victim, speech impaired, the elderly who often get confused with recorded instructions, or the consumer who has already gone the route of the automated phone system and needs to speak to a person.

Think twice about having the recording tell the customer that “Your call is important to us” or “Access our website to have your questions answered.” Customers call your business because they wish to use the telephone and do not believe their call is important to a recorded voice.

Make sure that when your customer reaches a human that they can be understood. Good diction and enunciation is a must.

If a human can’t answer the phone, callers should be encouraged to leave a message and a convenient call-back time. Then call them back as close to that time as possible.

**TIP****A Good Telephone Branching Requires Three Vital Elements:**

1. Explain the branching system immediately. For example, “You will be given four choices, including an in-house directory.”

2. Make sure that every branching route will get to a logical place. If you have five products, and inquiries about two of them go to line one and two go to line two but there is no line three, you have made a common mistake.
3. Always let people talk to a real live human being if they are confused or can't find their choice among the ones you offer.

Many imaginative business services are becoming available over the phone. For example, Michael, one of the authors of this book, offers personalized marketing consulting over the phone. For details, see the back of the book.

Phone Accessibility Checklist

WE OFFER	UPDATED YEARLY
☐ White pages listing in appropriate areas	☐
☐ Yellow pages listing under applicable topics and in appropriate geographical areas	☐
☐ Answering service/system with clear instructions	☐
☐ "800" numbers	☐
☐ Numbers listed on cards, receipts, order forms, mailers, vehicles, repair labels, and publications	☐

Mail Accessibility Checklist

WE OFFER

- ☐ Clear, stable address
- ☐ Return address on everything we distribute
- ☐ Mail forwarding up to date
- ☐ Personal relationship with mail delivery person to avoid mistakes
- ☐ Clearly identifiable mailbox, with alternative places to deliver packages and postage-due mail
- ☐ If in out-of-way location, maps are included in mailings

Walk-In Accessibility Checklist

WE OFFER

- ☐ Clear, distinct signs not blocked by trees
- ☐ Neighbors given an invitation to visit so they know where we are and what our business involves
- ☐ Parking available or clearly designated
- ☐ Safe places for bicycles
- ☐ Door that opens easily, bell in working order
- ☐ Convenient hours
- ☐ Convenient parking

Listing Your Services Creatively and Widely

As you might guess, there is no one way to list information about your business in a way everyone will find it; each business is unique and requires an analysis specific to its needs. Just the same, there are always a number of sensible steps you can take to make it easier and more pleasant for potential customers to find your business. These include the obvious such as listing in general phone books, specialized phone books (for seniors, disabled, ethnic yellow pages, and “green” pages, to name a few), and trade and professional association directories. Don’t forget Chamber of Commerce publications, public library listings, city directories, locally produced maps, tourist publications, international directories, and publications of county, state, and federal government agencies that operate in specialized fields. Online listings on electronic bulletin boards may also be useful. Remember also that local training schools (such as a culinary academy), trade schools, and wholesalers commonly publish directories, some of which may be appropriate for your business.

Search engines, such as Google, allow you to buy words and phrases that customers are likely to use to find you. The listing mechanism only charges you for the potential clients that end up clicking on your site. You can learn from experience what words lead the right customers to you. Conversely, you can learn what words are a waste of money. Ad clicks or “search advertising” exceeded \$5.1 billion in the United States last year and represented the largest category of Internet ads, according to the Interactive Advertising Bureau trade group and consulting firm PricewaterhouseCoopers.

A management consulting firm called the 3D Group specializes in a management testing technology commonly referred to as “360 feedback.” The firm buys one of the top two listings in Google for the words “360 feedback,” realizing that anyone looking for that type of management consulting service is likely to be familiar with that term.

The 3D Group pays roughly \$500 a month for the listing, gets two to three phone calls a week from people who saw the listing, and more than half of these calls become customers for a fee in the \$5,000-plus range. (See www.3dgroup.org.)

Greens Restaurant in San Francisco, California, an international stopping place for gourmets and vegetarian travelers for most of its 25-year history, uses Google listings. The restaurant is usually full on weekend evenings but can always accommodate more customers at lunch and on weeknights. Greens gets those additional customers by purchasing listings for “San Francisco vegetarian” and “vegetarian restaurant.” The cost is a few hundred dollars a month, and the return is more than a few hundred customers in the same time period.

Once the obvious listings are covered, it’s time to be a bit more creative: to think of the kinds of listings that are seen by significant numbers of people who might overlook traditional listing places. As an exercise to get your mind focused in the right direction, assume that all of the following people are trying to locate your business. Where are you listed, posted, or known that they are likely to look?

An old school chum whom you last saw five years ago before you opened your own business. To help this person locate you, inform your alumni associations as well as former employers and employees of your location. It’s a good idea to do this more than once. This can be done by a friendly letter—be sure to include your business card. Also, when communicating with an alumni organization, always provide information about what you are doing in a way that is suitable for use in its publication. For example, if you open a wharf-side retail store featuring fresh fish, you might include a picture of yourself in a wetsuit with a spear gun, captioned, “Our fish is so fresh, I haven’t caught it yet” or some such. Alumni magazines thrive on this sort of good-natured silliness and will surely run your picture and accompanying information, telling a number of old friends (great potential customers all) where you are.

One of your first customers, a person you haven't seen since you moved your business five years ago. If you have a customer mailing list, write to old customers informing them of your move. Do this more than once; people often don't focus on this sort of information unless they need your service right then. For example, if you have your wood floors refinished, you may not need the "Floor Doctor" again for a number of years. If he has moved and changed his name to the "Floor Surgeon," you may never find him unless he notifies you of the change a couple of times. In addition, anyone associated with your product or service (invoice, label, or container suppliers, for instance) should have your up-to-date address and phone numbers. People who run neighboring businesses should also be informed of your new location when you move and, if possible, you should arrange with your old landlord to display a small sign giving your new address. You might offer to pay a few dollars or provide the landlord a free service in exchange for displaying the sign for an extended period.

A person who heard about your unique skill from a former client and knows only your last name and city. You should be listed in all local professional and trade association directories, including those of trade groups and schools related to your work. Others in your city who do related work should know who you are and where you are located. It's a good practice to periodically bring others up to date on your location as well as the current nature of your business. This is true even for a civil engineer, painter, or author working out of his home.

Spend a few hours online with this chapter open in front of you. Sending emails to business contacts, associates, friends, and acquaintances will help ensure that people you know will in fact be able to find you when they want to.

Salli lives in a little-known rural area 60 miles north of San Francisco. Because she knows being accessible to the media helps her market her books, she is listed in the San Francisco phone book so that radio and

TV talk show producers and newspaper reporters who remember she is from the Bay Area can easily locate her.

Getting Referrals From People in Related Fields

Many people in service businesses, from yoga teachers to optometrists to piano teachers, rely on referrals for many of their new customers. Listing the availability of your services far and wide is crucial to getting those referrals. For example, if you're an independent paralegal (someone who helps people prepare legal forms for divorces, bankruptcies, and adoptions) you might want to list your services with the following types of groups:

- legal services (legal aid) offices
- battered women's shelters
- immigrants' help organizations
- law school "pro per" assistance centers
- law libraries
- community service agencies and directories
- drug treatment centers
- marriage counselors and family therapists
- social services offices
- college student assistance offices
- Gray Panthers and other senior advocacy organizations
- major corporation personnel departments
- Parents Without Partners and other singles groups
- law enforcement (including the sheriff's office and county jail)

- consumer organizations
- the state employment office
- women's organizations
- collection agencies
- child care centers
- military bases, including Judge Advocate General offices.

Unique Marketing Accessibility Problems

There are, of course, some businesses where marketing accessibility is a built-in problem. With custom-designed dresses that are sold through boutiques, for instance, the retailer is likely to allow labels with only the designer's name and the store's name and not the designer's or manufacturer's address. The same holds true with some craft items such as custom-made chairs. The retail stores don't want the customers to bypass them and go directly to the source.

From the specialized manufacturer's or craftsperson's point of view, a good solution to this problem is to include the name of a city as part of your designer name and logo. Suppose you run Sasha Designs and are located in San Diego, California. Your designs are sold all over the country, but it's very hard for people, even other retailers, to locate you directly. An easy solution is to change your name to Sasha/San Diego or otherwise work your location into your name. Now potential customers can simply call information in San Diego to find Sasha. Even if Sasha is located in a neighboring suburb, you could list the name in the San Diego directory.

Listing Questionnaire

We are listed in:

- ☐ All appropriate professional journals and directories

- ☐ Our alumni organizations' directories

- ☐ Local business organizations' publications

- ☐ Trade associations' directories

- ☐ Appropriate online databases

Trade Shows and Conferences

In some industries and for some businesses, the trade show is the primary marketing event. A customer who can't buy from you there probably won't buy from you at all. Such is the case for many products sold through gift shops, bookstores, boutiques and small groceries, and for businesses selling to interior designers, school districts, college lecture organizers and many more.

Especially for a new small business, a trade show offers a unique opportunity. Typically, retailers, wholesalers, sales reps, industry press, importers, exporters, and agents are all under one roof, and business is conducted in a myriad of ways. If you have a good product and display it well, one trade show can put your business on the map.

Conferences of people in a particular field often offer a similar opportunity. For example, people who purchase equipment for electronics companies and hospital X-ray departments might be in one place for several days, and if you have a product or service of interest to them it behooves you to be there, too. But before you rent a booth and set up a display, take the time to educate yourself about how the show operates and what activities are appropriate and customary.

All the marketing advice in this book is applicable to trade shows; reread it with your exhibition booth in mind. Especially keep in mind the general advice we discussed in Chapter 1: Don't recruit customers until you can properly serve them. Often, sales orders taken at a trade show cannot be filled on time, and word spreads to the rest of the industry with laser-like speed.

Here are some trade show tips to keep in mind:

- Get to know the old pros in your business and study what they do. If possible, get their advice on display, location, and promotional offers.
- Have enough supplies and back-up personnel, and don't attempt demonstrations unless you are sure it will go smoothly. A sample

(whether it's a toy or a bulldozer) that doesn't work will be the topic of far more comment than will a hundred products that do work.

- Try to set up your display early, and design it to be flexible enough to adjust to the surroundings. It's hard to know who or what will be next to you and what visual, technical, or other complications can arise. At one booksellers' trade fair, for example, the booth of a publisher of books on human sexuality was located between those of a Bible company and a publisher of children's books. Clearly, adjustment was in order.
- Get a list of the trade shows scheduled for all convention centers near you. Consider displaying not only at those in your field, but also at those that are in any way connected with what you do. For example, an architect who likes to design kitchens might take a booth at a gourmet food trade show, or a lawyer who specializes in employment problems might set up a small display at a personnel executives' conference.

One interesting recent development is that trade fairs have become so successful for some businesses that they have led to the development of permanent national wholesale showrooms, normally located in a sales mart devoted to the products of similar types of businesses. While this sort of sales center has been popular with furniture, jewelry, and gifts for some time, it has now spread to many other areas, including crafts. National Craft Showroom opened in New York, primarily as a response to the growing success of crafts fairs throughout the country. The invited exhibitors for the showroom are selected from the best craftspeople who have displayed in regional crafts fairs. These can be a very cost-effective way for a small business to display its wares. Obviously, the main advantage of this sort of display is that the type of customer who would attend a trade fair (wholesalers, store buyers, sales reps) now has access to your product throughout the year.

Using Trade Shows to Launch Your Business

Vivien Feyer is a trained psychologist. Several years ago on a trip to Bali she was struck by the fact that the Balinese are a happy people who view work as a service to the gods. Attracted also to Balinese jewelry, and knowing that she had a talent for design, Feyer decided to experiment with the idea of having fine jewelry of silver, gold, shell, and other natural materials manufactured in Bali to her design.

One of the many questions Feyer had to face as part of launching her business (which she named Paradiso: Jewels of Bali), was the basic one that all new business-people must confront. Was there a genuine demand for the product she wished to bring to market? To find out, she decided to attend some trade shows. Here are a few of her comments.

“My first show was the International Fashion and Boutique Show in New York City. I was completely naïve, but I knew I needed to see if I was kidding myself or if my designs would work. Even though I had a sad little booth, retailers, reps, and others were interested in my jewelry and were very complimentary. I sold enough to pay for the show, met a lot of people at all levels of the business, and saw what others were doing. Best of all I found out in just a few days that my basic business concept was sound.

“In later shows, I improved my display and had many more products. Many of my first customers reordered and I met many more retailers. I also met a lot of charlatans who wanted to order but not pay, and learned quickly that if you don’t check credit references very strictly, you don’t stay in business. Through people I met at the shows, I was able to sign up a good crew of regional sales representatives.

“To tell you the truth, despite the fact that as I did more shows I recruited a wonderful crew of people to help with the booth (dropped-out lawyers, many of them) and had good business access, I don’t really enjoy doing trade shows. It’s all so overblown, full of hype, and, in the jewelry business, a little paranoid, in that you have a lot of valuable goods in a place where security isn’t always so great. These days I do very few.”



Customer Recourse

Elements of a Good Recourse Policy.....	221
Designing a Good Recourse Policy.....	224
Consult Advisors	225
Join an Established Ethical Business Group.....	226
Involve Employees.....	227
Ask for Public Participation	227
Telling Customers About Your Recourse Policy	228
Putting Your Recourse Policy in Writing.....	231

How often are you disappointed with a business transaction? Have you ever bought a shirt that had to be taken back because of a flaw? Have you ever returned a car to the repair shop because it wasn't fixed right? Have you ever ordered something from a catalogue or the Web only to be told a month later that it won't be available for many more months? Have you waited hours or days for someone to show up to work on your house? Have you spent months trying to have a billing error corrected, meanwhile getting new bills that contain the same mistake plus penalty charges? Have you ever authorized a business to automatically debit your account and months after you have terminated your relationship they are still debiting your account?

When these sorts of problems occur, your reaction probably varies from mild annoyance over the minor ones, some of which are not even worth the hassle to correct, to anxiety and anger over major problems. Chances are you will be reluctant to patronize a business that won't correct a problem or one that you think will be reluctant to do so and will create more hassles for you than the transaction is worth. Certainly, you are unlikely to recommend such a business to your friends.

Slip-ups are inevitable in any business. To avoid losing customers (and referrals) over mistakes, you need to establish an effective recourse policy. Providing recourse to customers simply means giving them a way to get a fair resolution of their complaints. It's essential that you make a very strong recourse statement to your customers and back it up with an immediate response to their needs.

It's almost essential that a small business go out of its way to emphasize its recourse policy, especially in the light of the mistaken public presumption that because larger businesses have more assets, they are more responsible to their customers. While most customers appreciate the personalized service they receive from a small company, they sometimes worry that, should something go wrong, their recourse is more limited than with a major corporation. They might assume, for example, that a business that does lots of advertising is a substantial

company with plenty of money behind it, and that if something serious involving legal liability occurs, it has the resources to make it good. In fact, small businesses, because they are closer to their customers, often offer better recourse than larger ones. Your job is not only to establish an excellent recourse policy but to make sure your customers understand and trust what you offer.

Although recourse is a potentially difficult and unpleasant topic, it is at the heart of long-term business health because it protects the supportive customers who make personal recommendations. Relatively small efforts, well thought out from the customer's point of view, cost very little and do much in protecting our total investment in public trust. In fact, when you promptly and attentively make sure the customer is treated right, you can gain their loyalty. It feels so good to have the transaction turn out right that the customer naturally tells his or her friends.

Good Recourse Pays Off With Good Publicity

Michael's five-year-old Hewlett-Packard scanner didn't work on his new Macintosh system. He checked the HP website, which said there was no upgrade available. Disappointed, Michael emailed HP. He received an email back informing him that he would get a phone call. Sure enough, someone from HP phoned and told Michael they would send a new scanner and asked him to send the old one back.

Michael was not just happy with the recourse, he was ecstatic that the replacement machine had a beautiful, innovative design. He not only put this good customer service news on his blog, he now tells everyone that HP deserves a medal for first-rate recourse. The rule of thumb is that an angry customer tells ten people, and a happy customer tells three.

On the Internet, recourse is equally important—perhaps even more so. A survey of Internet shoppers found that 85% considered “product

returns” a key to their online shopping decisions. (*The Industry Standard*, August 14, 2000.)

The Industry Standard, a former Internet magazine, offered a secret shopper who reported on Internet transactions. In May of 2000, the shopper ordered clothing from ten well-known retailers’ online outlets. Only the products from two of the sites—Nordstrom and Victoria’s Secret—matched the descriptions and images as presented on the websites.

Much of the difficulty in developing a recourse policy is not related to designing good mechanisms to catch and correct errors. Instead, the key is to be able to offer an effective recourse policy in a context where your customers are mad, disappointed, anxious, or all three. Unless you set up a policy in advance, there is little hope that you can do this effectively.

Unfortunately, many small businesses attempt to handle individual problems as they arise. We believe this is a mistake. It confuses both your customers and your employees. For example, you may give the impression you will repair your product only in limited situations, yet retain the discretion to actually be more generous if you feel a good customer deserves more attention. But a customer who doesn’t know that you will try to solve the problem if confronted is likely to give up in disgust and never discuss it with you. If that happens, you risk losing a valued customer, who is very likely to pass those negative feelings on to others.

In a retail business, a reputation for quick exchanges or refunds is a key ingredient to customer loyalty. For example, with the stores you do business with, you probably know which ones allow returns without question, which have complicated procedures to return an item, and which make it so difficult to return an item that it’s not worth the hassle. Many good neighborhood businesses have built their following based on customers’ confidence that the business will stand behind its product or service.

In this context, it's worth remembering that your customer has recourse to public measures if you don't handle the dispute satisfactorily. In extreme cases, a determined customer can picket your business or hold a press conference. More typically, customers appeal to local consumer action groups, TV reporters, newspaper columnists, put postings on the Web, or just tell their friends. You may not think of customers spreading negative feelings about your business to their friends as "going public," but it surely is. Now that so many people browse the Internet and are part of online newsgroups, negative word of mouth can be sent to literally thousands of people instantaneously. Consider how many times you have remarked to a friend that you plan to try a particular restaurant, optician, or computer store only to be told about a negative experience that your friend (or maybe even your friend's friend or someone your Aunt Hilda's neighbor knows) had with that particular establishment. Did you still plan to patronize the business? Probably not.

An extreme but humorous example of negative word of mouth came from an acquaintance who was cheated by a 12-hour photo processing merchant. When he couldn't get suitable recourse from the manager, he became so frustrated that he pounded on the counter, inadvertently scattering merchandise around the store. The manager called the police, and the customer, while standing around waiting for the police to come, gathered support from other customers for his plight. When the police arrived, they listened to both sides and then talked to each party separately. They informed the store owner to mend his ways or face possible prosecution and then, smiling the whole time, told our friend not to damage property again.

Elements of a Good Recourse Policy

The best recourse policies give your customers as much control as possible, as early in the relationship with you as possible. When people feel they are in control from the start, they are much less likely to get

upset. As you design your recourse policy, ask yourself: What role do my customers play in deciding whether my product or service is substandard?

An example of a situation where a customer enjoys a high degree of control is a fine restaurant where the discovery of a hair in the salad immediately results in delivery of a new salad, a sincere apology, and often a free bottle of wine or some other extra. In this situation, the customer is at least implicitly in control, the assumption being that when dining in that restaurant, every effort will be made to provide first-class service and take care of even small problems. On a simpler level, Paul Domaleski, a body worker in San Francisco, has to deal with clients sometimes coming up to 15 minutes late because of parking problems. When his schedule permits, he adds 15 minutes to the end of the body work session as a form of preemptive recourse.

An example of little customer control is when you attempt to deal with a mistake in your checking account balance at a bank, where the typical attitude is that you are wrong. Incidentally, in this era of bank deregulation, treating customers with more respect would seem to be a much better strategy than giving free teddy bears to everyone opening a new account (especially since the majority of accounts acquired with a premium offer don't stay open a year). Sadly, most banks are so focused on their own bottom line that they resist spending even modest sums to treat their customers decently. This situation appears to be getting worse instead of better with the increased use of ATM machines and electronic banking; it's not easy to work things out with a machine. One of these days, someone in the banking business will do the things necessary to give customers more control and will revolutionize the business.

Rating Sellers' Recourse Policies

The online auction website eBay, with millions of registered sellers, is creating a world of businesspeople who understand recourse in business.

Every established eBay seller is rated by current and former customers. The single most important element in rating a business is based on the business's recourse. Reading buyer's evaluations will tell you immediately whether the seller is reputable. Buyers mostly tell stories about how their problems were handled. If the recourse was prompt, courteous, and efficient they will have positive things to say. But unsatisfactory recourse is the single most important reason for poor ratings.

eBay sellers know that they need to focus on their recourse policies. And eBay itself offers constant advice on the importance of recourse practices.

Not long ago, an even more frustrating recourse problem involved trying to enforce the provisions of the warranty on any new American car. Indeed, some customers became so frustrated about the lack of automobile company response when their cars broke that they painted them yellow to look like lemons and call attention to their plight. It proved to be a very effective way to get the message across, and eventually a number of states stepped in and passed "lemon laws" to force manufacturers to arbitrate the most serious warranty disputes. In other words, the need for recourse became so great that laws had to be passed to take care of it. In the meantime, of course, close to one-third of Americans began purchasing imported cars, particularly Japanese ones, which had fewer problems in the first place and whose makers offered mediation and arbitration to solve customer disputes.

Today, a similar situation has developed in the insurance business, where company after company is canceling the insurance of long-

time policy holders or raising rates outrageously, with no meaningful opportunity for customers to appeal what they believe is arbitrary treatment.

The worst instances where customers lack control over recourse result in lawsuits. Lawsuits are expensive, slow, and unpredictable. Even if a favorable judgment is entered in your lifetime, it may be impossible to collect if the person you sued is insolvent. Because most people understand these drawbacks, it means that if your business has been sued, or even threatened with suit, it is a sure sign that your recourse policy is seriously deficient.

Designing a Good Recourse Policy

When designing or improving your recourse system, remember that customers care most about:

- **Promptness.** The amount of time it takes—or your customers think it will take—to correct a problem is crucial. Fast resolution of disputes is not good enough if you can think of a way to do it faster.
- **Responsibility.** Is your customer presumed (even implicitly) to be the cause of the problem when a complaint is made? If so, your policy is a poor one. Clearly, the responsibility for dealing with a real or perceived mistake should be on your business.

No two businesses are exactly alike. For this reason, we can't lay out a policy that you can clip out and apply to your situation. But whether you are a stonecutter, a storekeeper, or a stress-reduction clinic, there are a number of proven techniques to help communicate that your recourse policy is very responsive to your customers' needs. Here are several of the best.

Consult Advisors

Invite well-known and respected people to serve as a board of advisors to your business and get them to help you make your business better—which, of course, involves developing a recourse policy. These advisors should not be merely names used to impress, but trusted associates. By doing this you are borrowing a technique that has been used by nonprofit organizations for years. As long as you run an honest business dedicated to serving your customers, it will work for you. Be sure to list your advisors on your letterhead. (We discuss the value of this sort of association in other contexts in Chapter 11.) When it comes to recourse, associating prominent, well-thought-of people with your business is a subtle but direct way of assuring your customers that in the event of a problem, you will make it good. Your customers know that your respected advisors wouldn't associate themselves with your business if it weren't trustworthy. If you can actually involve one or two of your prominent friends in a formal mediation procedure to deal with occasional serious complaints, so much the better.

A board of advisors was used effectively by Dick Rolm, an independent film producer working in New England who contracted to make a film for a local public TV station. The station was dissatisfied with the results, which led to a very uncomfortable situation for both parties. The matter was resolved when two of the most prominent board members of the TV station took the time to get together with two of the film company's advisors. The film was reedited, and the station was charged somewhat less for it. The happy result was that Rolm got paid, no lawsuit was necessary, the parties are still on good terms, and the public got to see a good film.

Small businesses can tell customers about a board of advisors in various ways:

- A motorcycle shop could hang photos of the owner together with a few racing celebrities on the wall. Alongside the photos would appear the list of advisors, including the people pictured.
- A computer consultant could print a list of business advisors along with a short list of current and former clients (after getting their approval, of course) on all brochures and on the cover sheet for bids.
- A graphics supply wholesaler might use some examples of design work done by prominent local artists in its catalog in addition to listing them as advisors.
- A textile teacher could display his latest fabric design along with photos of his finished upholstery in the homes of his well-known advisors.

Join an Established Ethical Business Group

It is also wise to join an organization that already handles customer problems.

If a truly active Better Business Bureau exists in your locale, consider joining. Better yet are local Consumer Action organizations and mediation services. Merely adding your name to their membership roster is not enough. If you participate in the group's activities, you will learn a great deal about how to handle recourse problems and solutions at the same time you are doing your bit to promote public trust in small business and helping to assure honest business principles in your community. A fringe benefit is that word of your involvement in good business groups often spreads, which, of course, is good for your business.

Involve Employees

Consider forming a customer service committee of employees. No one knows what your customers need more than the people who deal with them daily. And no one has more incentive to make changes in the way the business operates and to avoid complaints before they are made.

Nolo decided to try to get every individual book and software mail order out the door the same day, or the next day if the order comes after noon Pacific Time. While this sometimes takes almost superhuman effort from its customer service representatives, it has turned out to be well worth it, if for no other reason than the fact that the reps now waste very little time dealing with calls asking, “Where is my book?” Before customers can wonder where their books are, they have them.

Ask for Public Participation

Include as wide a range of community members as possible in the design and decisionmaking of your recourse policy. A good example of this is the Pike Place Market in Seattle, which houses many small businesses. This group has wisely created a committee of both business operators and members of the general public, which meets periodically to review specific complaints about consumer problems. This is a marvelous process, as it allows both many different points of view to be aired and creative solutions to be developed.

You may doubt that your customers really care enough about your small business to participate. This is rarely true. The people who deal with a particular business on a regular basis, such as professional gardeners who buy from a particular nursery or graphic artists who patronize a particular typesetter, care a great deal about how the business operates and probably have all sorts of ideas for improvement, including how to develop a better or more flexible recourse policy. If you ask them to share their ideas with you, they probably will.

Good Recourse Policies

Here are some examples of businesses with good recourse policies:

- The Cross Corporation allows customers to return a pen for any reason, and stores that carry Cross products are provided with a supply of addressed envelopes to give to any customer who wishes a refund or a new pen. In other words, the decision of the Cross Corporation to guarantee its product is made evident to consumers by providing easy and convenience recourse.
- Sears Roebuck & Co., a huge company selling moderately priced goods, has a generally good reputation for customer satisfaction. For example, it has traditionally guaranteed its Craftsman Tools and replaces them years after purchase if they are defective. When Sears started selling computers, people correctly assumed that the same sort of replacement policy applied. This assumption was a key to Sears's early success in the computer market. Customers, knowing that there was little chance of getting good service from many computer retailers, preferred dealing with a store with a solid reputation for customer service.

Telling Customers About Your Recourse Policy

To ensure that your customers are always aware that should any problems arise they will be treated fairly, you must closely examine how you present your recourse policy.

- Is your recourse policy clear?
- Is it communicated to your customers early and often?
- Do your friends, employees, and customers perceive your policy in the way you intended?
- Are customers with small complaints really encouraged to bring them to your attention?

A good recourse policy should be written and available to all customers and should be posted on your website. As noted, if your customers are educated in advance as to their rights in any potential situation, there will be far fewer problems and angry customers. Even customers who are a pain in the neck and enjoy making trouble will have a more difficult time if you adopt a fair recourse policy and go out of your way to let them know about it. And, of course, it is even more important to reach those customers who are reticent about voicing legitimate complaints. It is obviously much better to encourage these people to tell you about any problem with your goods or services than it is to have them avoid you in the future because of a problem you never even knew about.

A written policy is especially important in the mail order business, and the best mail order companies all have a guaranteed return policy. They do it for a simple reason: People are reluctant to buy something they can't see and touch, especially if they think it might be difficult to return. Thus, phrases such as "Return for any reason, any time within 30 days" have become common and have enabled people to shop through the mail and online with more confidence.

Recreational Equipment Inc., a cooperatively owned retail and mail order company headquartered in Seattle that specializes in outdoor apparel and equipment, does even better. Its order form states: "REI guarantees satisfaction on every item purchased. If you are unhappy with your purchase for any reason, please return it for a replacement or full refund." (Incidentally, this company is listed in *The 100 Best Companies to Work for in America*, discussed in Chapter 5.)

And the legendary L.L. Bean Co., a small business grown large, which built its reputation on quality clothing and outdoor equipment as well as excellent customer service, backs up its product with this statement in its catalogue and at its website: "All of our products are guaranteed to give 100% satisfaction in every way. Return anything purchased from us at any time if it proves otherwise. We will replace it, refund your purchase price or credit

Customer Recourse Policies and Practices

We have a written customer recourse policy.

☐ YES ☐ NO

Our written policy is:

☐ Given to all customers ☐ Given only upon request ☐ Displayed prominently on the premises

☐ Our policy identifies and deals with those areas and situations where customers are most likely to have problems with our goods or service.

☐ We have regular communication with our customers to be sure they understand our recourse policy and know that we implement it efficiently.

A customer who complains is:

☐ Always right ☐ Almost always right ☐ Seldom right ☐ Rarely or never right

The most common complaints involve: _____

When the customer is right, he or she gets:

☐ Full refund or replacement when: _____

☐ Partial refund when: _____

☐ We send or give questionnaires to customers to evaluate their satisfaction with our service.

Our liability insurance covers the following customer problems:

When a customer deals with our insurance company, it is:

☐ Very responsive ☐ Responsive ☐ Slow to respond ☐ Don't know

When the customer disagrees with our recourse offer, we have available:

☐ Appeal process ☐ Arbitration ☐ Industry-established board of review

☐ Mediation ☐ Nothing

☐ Other _____

your credit card, as you wish. WE DO NOT WANT YOU TO HAVE ANYTHING FROM L.L. BEAN THAT IS NOT COMPLETELY SATISFACTORY.” Not only do L.L. Bean customers get assurance that they will be satisfied, but Bean’s recourse policy also works as an effective marketing message, because customers realize that only companies truly offering quality goods can make this type of promise.

Putting Your Recourse Policy in Writing

Lands’ End sent out its first catalogue in 1964 from a basement along the river in Chicago’s old tannery district. In one of the recent catalogues it printed the business’s “Principles of Doing Business.” Principle 3 states: “We accept any return, for any reason, at any time. Our products are guaranteed. No fine print. No arguments. We mean exactly what we say. GUARANTEED. PERIOD.”

Reassured by this guarantee, Salli overcame her reluctance to buy a swimsuit through the mail. The swimsuit was shipped the same day, and she was very pleased with the quality and fit. One week after it arrived, Salli received a phone call from Lands’ End asking if she was happy with the purchase. Not only was their recourse policy clearly stated, they followed up to make sure they had a happy customer. Recourse policies can’t get any better than that.

Now, let’s look at several other examples of how to put a recourse policy in writing. You will notice that these policies anticipate typical problem areas and establish a procedure to head them off before a dispute arises. For instance, a painting contractor we know prides himself on being extremely neat and doing quality work. However, because there is a lot of potential for paranoia among his customers about what their rights are if paint drips on their floors or furniture, he is especially clear about the precautions he takes to avoid this kind of problem and about what he will do to correct any that should arise. He not only promises in writing to correct the problem, but explains

the type of insurance he carries and just what it covers. He also explains provisions made for outside evaluation and mediation should any dispute ever arise.

Another frequent problem for painting contractors is that a color a client chooses from a color key looks different than expected on the wall. All sorts of factors, from the nature of the surface being painted to lighting, can affect this. In anticipation of this common problem, this contractor puts on a first coat and then encourages his customers to live with it for a few days. He specifies in writing the number of days his client has to decide if the color is the correct shade. If the customer doesn't like the color, the contractor makes agreed-upon modifications in the second coat. If the customer assents to the color choice, the final coat is applied and after that no free repainting is done for reasons of color. If, however, the customer is legitimately dissatisfied with the quality of work, the contractor will do any repainting necessary at any time.

Ruth, who owns a garden and plant store, has a replacement policy should any plant she sell prove unsatisfactory. However, to help her customers avoid most common problems, she instructs them both orally and in writing as to what kind of care the plant they purchase requires. For example, Ruth goes out of her way to explain the symptoms of over-watering, letting a plant grow too large for its pot and become rootbound, and excess exposure to sunlight. Armed with this information, the customer is in a good position to evaluate and save a drooping or rootbound plant. One additional advantage of this kind of instruction is that Ruth gives her customers a reasonable standard against which to judge whether a problem with the plant was caused by their neglect or occurred because the plant was defective in the first place.

A carpet retailer we know in California's Sacramento Valley not only guarantees in writing all carpets sold, but encourages customers with complaints to contact him so that problems can be remedied. As part of doing this, he sends every customer a postcard a few weeks after a carpet purchase, with a reminder of the store's "total satisfaction" policy.

In addition, he includes a statement of customers' rights on his website and every time he communicates with them in writing. An amusing side result of this policy occurred as part of a small claims court procedure initiated by the rug store against a customer who hadn't paid her bill. The customer showed up in court and said she failed to pay because the carpet was defective. The store owner was able to produce the written recourse policy, a copy of his Web page, a copy of the postcard, and several other communications explaining to the customer the "total satisfaction" policy. He then testified that, although a year had passed, the customer had never complained about the quality of the product until that day in court. The judge not only ruled for the rug company but complimented its honest business practices before a courtroom full of people.

Kaiser Permanente, a huge health maintenance organization, invites some patients to fill out a card about the care they received. "If you're pleased," they advise, "Fill out the side of the card that says "Great!" If you're not so happy fill out the "Not so Great" side of the card to let us know how we didn't meet your expectations." Patients then have an opportunity to talk with the department manager or other administrator to get the problem resolved. If they want they can also receive a refund of their copayment, up to \$25. Not only does this allow Kaiser to monitor service, it gives the patient control over service.

Your recourse policy should, of course, be on your website—a subject covered in the next two chapters. ●

Marketing on the Internet

Business Uses of the Internet: Demystified	237
The Geographic Reach of the Internet.....	240
What to Put on Your Site	243
Your Schedule of Events.....	244
Links to Related Sites	245
Location Information	247
Valuable Free Information	248
Designing an Internet Site.....	249
Getting Outside Help	249
Your Home Page.....	251
The Structure of Your Website	252
Interactivity and Customer Screening	254
How to Help People Find You Online	257
Get Covered by Search Engines	257
Get Recommended on Other Sites.....	259
Cultivate Online Recommendations From Users	260
Distribute Your Internet Address.....	261
Pay for Referrals	261
International Marketing.....	263
Prices.....	263
Language and Country	264
Management	266
Blogs for Your Business.....	267

The early hopes and speculation about the Internet have fortunately died down. And the Internet has quickly evolved into a solid marketing vehicle, much like the telephone and the newspaper. Nearly all of our clients use the Internet extensively and nearly all have good websites.

The issues of marketing a business that are covered in other chapters, including listing your business in appropriate spots, being accessible and transparent, and educating customers, also apply to marketing on the Internet. The Internet also presents some unique and interesting opportunities for marketing your business.

A Back-to-Basics Internet Banking Operation

ING Direct USA is an Internet-based savings bank that operates with relatively low overhead. A straightforward, no-frills operation, the bank offers mail and phone banking but has no ATMs or branches. ING offers relatively high interest rates on deposits—currently four times the industry average—and there are no fees or minimum deposit requirements. The bank has been tremendously successful—customers seem to appreciate its focus on a single mission: providing the best savings alternative possible. As stated in a *New York Times* article about ING Direct:

“... the bank’s core message isn’t about its business model. [It’s about] leading Americans back to savings. ... For ING Direct, the first order of business is introducing products that make it easy and financially rewarding for customers to save. But a big part of its strategy is choosing the products it won’t offer. For example, it doesn’t issue credit cards, or market auto loans, or even provide checking accounts. Those services encourage customers to spend, and are contrary to the focus on saving.” (*New York Times*, January 2, 2005, “Rebels With a Cause, and a Business Plan.”)

Business Uses of the Internet: Demystified

Most existing businesses now use the Internet. Many businesses have a website and nearly all do research and find suppliers on the Internet.

There are three approaches business owners can consider when using the Internet as a marketing tool. The first approach is to think of the Internet as a full-color spread that appears in the yellow pages that:

- can provide many levels of depth for inquiring users
- costs you almost nothing to use, and
- has an interactive quality.

The second approach is to focus on making a final sale using the Internet's payment functions.

The third is to concentrate on the Internet's dynamic functioning. (See Chapter 12.) This is what you experience when you buy an airline ticket and choose an airline seat or submit a bid on eBay.

Whatever approach you take, temper it with common sense. The Internet is useful and important for many businesses, but it does not produce miracles. Among the businesses that successfully use the Internet now are those that can access and ship from a huge inventory that they don't physically possess and that no retail store could ever rival without incurring astronomical overhead costs. Examples of such businesses include those selling new or used books, music, wine, and computer software and hardware.

The Internet may also increase competition, because more people with similar skills and services will be entering the same geographic market. For example, it isn't too expensive for a water safety engineer from North Carolina to rent a room in St. Louis and work there for three months on an assignment that was initiated over the Internet. To compete, safety engineers in St. Louis will have to think about their availability to work in other parts of the country and the world.

Internet Shopping

The Internet has made major changes in pricing, shopping, and how retail businesses deal with customers. Businesspeople, especially retailers, are aware of people who ask a lot of questions at a store and then buy on the Internet. It can work both ways, though. There are also those customers who come to you more educated as consumers—people who learn about products and services on the Internet and then buy at a store because they want service or maintenance or they want to touch the product and deal with a real person. What's important is that we all have to come to terms with the effect of the Internet on our business and learn to use it to our advantage.

There are many ways to use the Internet to market your business, but the first step is to create a website. Practical aspects of designing and using dynamic websites, in which businesses can interact with customers and clients, are discussed in detail in Chapter 12.

What Is a Website?

Having a website—often known as a Web page—simply means having a computer file that is publicly accessible through the global computer network known as the Internet. The files that make up your website are stored on servers that are connected to the Internet 24 hours a day. Companies that run and maintain servers are often called Web hosts, or hosting services. Once you provide a hosting service with your files, it will put them on its servers and make sure that the servers are constantly running and connected to the Internet.

Other companies, known as Internet service providers (ISPs), allow their customers to connect to the Internet by dialing in or through other technologies such as DSL or cable. Often, ISPs offer hosting services as well.

A website can include text, graphics, video, and sound. It is usually in color, can be animated, and can automatically connect the viewer to other websites. The Internet uses technology called hypertext markup language (HTML) that makes it easy to send images, photos, and sound on the Internet.



TIP

Don't Neglect Customers Who Aren't Online. Internet access isn't available to everyone and some people are simply flummoxed by it. So be mindful that some of your customers don't use the Internet, and some never will. This means that, when possible, you should provide the same services and information to non-Internet users that you provide online. As an example of what not to do, a local bookstore we know has an online directory of its inventory, but no computer in the store for customers.

The Geographic Reach of the Internet

In a couple of particulars, the Internet closely resembles the yellow pages of the phone book: It is like a list that can be accessed by users at their convenience, and it is regularly used for seeking business information. But unlike traditional yellow pages, the Internet is not geographically limited; it has millions of listings covering many parts of the planet.

So bear in mind that on the Internet, your business listing will be part of a much larger universe than the yellow pages can embrace. If you are one of 30 patent lawyers listed in your local printed yellow pages, you may find yourself among 9,000 patent lawyers listed in English on the Internet. Among the elements that distinguish you from all these other patent lawyers and might attract particular clients are your years of experience, law school attended, location and size of firm, and gender. These characteristics become vitally important when you join the cyberspace business community. Potential clients need to know what makes you unique and desirable. When you're ready to compose your listing, imagine yourself trying to make it into the *Guinness Book of World Records*—and concentrate on the feats that would be appealing to prospective clients.

Geographic reach may present a challenge or a bonus for you on the Internet. If your business is geographically limited, define those limits clearly: graphically, with a map and also with descriptive words.

For example, Jim Davis's sewer repair business is located in Seattle. On his Internet site, a map shows that his office is in the University district about four miles from downtown. To increase the range of possible customers, he also shows the entire city of Seattle and four suburbs and color-codes them as the "immediate service area for emergency service"—and for these potential customers, Davis offers to give "an exact appointment time; if we're late by more than one half-hour, you get 20% off the bill except during earthquakes, snow, Super Bowl parades or other acts of God." The outlying counties are marked "by appointment."

Davis also lists the names of 51 neighborhoods, suburbs, and small towns in his list of service areas, just in case someone is searching the Internet for sites that contain the name of his or her own tiny local area.

Only Rare Birds Don't Need the Internet

Two business friends of ours are not on the Internet and don't plan to be. One is our friend Al P., a printer and a master of the art of using a special old-fashioned multilith machine—an offset printing press. To appreciate and use his work, designers and graphic artists need to see and touch it. In addition, Al works alone and already has more work than he can handle. For Al, marketing on the Internet is irrelevant.

Another friend, Bob G., is a brilliant class action lawyer with more major victories than anyone in his field. He occasionally has room for a new client, but doesn't dare to be listed on the Internet because he doesn't have time to answer his mail or screen additional prospective clients. Getting referrals from the few other lawyers who know his work and the kind of clients he is looking for is sufficient and efficient. His listing in the yellow pages, under Attorneys, is plain vanilla—just his name, so old friends can find him. And for Bob, that is sufficient.

But other than Al and Bob's businesses, most others need a website, because a website is as generic as a yellow pages listing. For many people, if you don't have a website you're not in business.

Geography is not a serious limit for Lief Gunderssen, who sells accounting systems to credit unions—except that credit unions have different legal structures in different parts of the world, and his package is designed in English. Gunderssen sells his accounting system, which is part software, part paper, and part files, all over the United States, and occasionally outside the country. With the Internet, the whole world is a potential market, but Gunderssen's challenge is to match potential customers with a product they can use.

In the U.S. and Canada, the laws are appropriate for his accounting package—so he emphasizes this fact to prospective customers and lists his toll-free phone number. For eight other countries where a modified version of his package can be used, his site includes separate pages explaining the modifications necessary for each. He also addresses the most commonly asked questions in that country. On his main Web page, Gunderssen has a large banner explaining that his program is based on English. The banner is there to make sure that he doesn't have to waste anyone's time answering questions about other languages. Finally, he has a separate page for overseas credit unions that are part of American and Canadian corporations where he also answers commonly asked questions. The site design, using multiple pages, gives quick answers to people just glancing and detailed answers to people who need details.

Finally, for Denise Armomot's classical sheet music reproduction business, the Internet's worldwide coverage is a bonus. She has a list of more than 2,000 titles that she provides. The list is available in seven languages, and Armomot is adding more as quickly as she can find people to help her with the translations. Choice of language is at the top of her page.

The Internet Is Evolving

Uses of technology keep evolving long after the technology itself stabilizes. For example, the now ubiquitous telephone was first used by businesses to send short messages, place orders within a company, and confirm meeting times. Doctors and pharmacies were among the first to have phones, largely for emergency service. Idle chatter and personal conversations did not become common on the phone for nearly 30 years after its introduction. Widespread residential use of the phone—in two-thirds of U.S. homes—did not occur for 70 years.

Internet technology is far from stable, and we should not expect long-term patterns of usage to emerge for businesses or individuals for many years. In the meantime, accept the volatility of this medium and be innovative in your marketing. It's a challenge at first, but it can be lots of fun. Our advice is to get online (if you aren't already) and get a feel for what others are doing.

What to Put on Your Site

Roughly 80% of all businesses have a website. Many businesses know that they need a website, but when it comes to what information to actually post on the site, they're stumped.

For the vast majority of online businesses, using lots of gimmicks is just a waste of time. Simplicity is now appreciated by nearly everyone in Internet design. Google went from nowhere to number one in just three years—partly because it has no advertising on its main page and is mostly white space.

A simple site full of information that is kept fresh will attract new customers and keep them loyal. The cost of buying the computer hardware and software or expertise necessary to set up an Internet

site is usually fairly low. But the cost of maintaining the information on the site can be high. Nothing makes a worse impression than out-of-date information or images. It is the online equivalent of a poorly managed place of business and will destroy positive word-of-mouth recommendations. Don't put anything on your website that will rapidly go out of date unless you have the resources to update it faithfully.

If you don't have the time to continually monitor and update your site, one option is to hire someone to keep your site fresh. This may be more complex—and more expensive—if your site provides highly specialized information and needs to be updated by an expert. Oftentimes, however, the job can be done by people with good generalized knowledge and excellent language skills, such as freelance writers or editors. Of course, if you've hired someone to create the content on your site, it might make sense to have that person monitor and update it as well.

If you decide to take on updating duties yourself, there are several software programs available that make the job easier than you might think. For example, Michael uses *Coffeecup*, software that creates fairly complex websites and is easy to update without knowing Web language. Other popular and user-friendly programs include *Adobe Dreamweaver*, *Microsoft Expression*, and *Adobe Contribute*.

Let's take a look at some ideas for what kinds of information might be effective at your site. Keep in mind that with the huge range of different kinds of businesses, there's no magic formula for good content. As discussed above, be sure to examine your goals for your site and choose content accordingly.

Your Schedule of Events

The Internet can be a great place to post your calendar of marketing events—especially because the Web provides an ideal forum to keep that information updated and personalized.

First, online listings can be continually updated and constantly available in a way that no other medium allows. Newspaper calendars, for example, are prepared many days in advance and customarily appear only weekly.

Entire new businesses have been created just using Internet calendars and email reminders. Bazaar Café, a small coffee shop in San Francisco, has free live music nearly every night of the week. Internet surfers can get easy access to acts booked each day, week, and month by accessing the website calendar at www.bazaarcafe.com.

These days, a wide range of social, art, and activist groups exist entirely by using online calendars and email lists. One such group, Laughing Squid, at www.laughingsquid.com, is an independently owned service specializing in Web hosting for artists, individuals, nonprofits, and small organizations and is primarily a referral-based business.

In addition, the Internet makes it easy for users to find events that match their interests. For example, people interested in events, displays, and meetings about overweight dogs in Duluth can create an automated online search that will alert them when the keywords chosen for the search pop up online. Google Alerts (www.google.com/alerts) is one service that does such searches. Or, people can choose to receive automatic notification of events by using an RSS feed to track new postings to websites they're interested in.

Holding creative marketing events is vital to create positive recommendations for your business. (See Chapter 14.) Listing your events on the Internet is now a necessity.

Links to Related Sites

We assume that you understand the nature and benefits of cooperation in business, discussed in several chapters of this book. For a business that views itself as a constructive, cooperative part of society, the Internet

offers the additional advantage of providing automatic referrals to you from other cooperative businesses. And you can do the same for them with links—or online connections—to their websites.

Linking sites on the Web is a great service to customers and potential customers. Links are commonly referred to as hot links or hyperlinks. Using links on your website is in itself a sign of the cooperative spirit of your business.

The Ps and Qs of Asking Permission

Below is a sample of a simple request from one site asking permission to link to another site.

To: Business Manager/officesuppliestoyourdoor.com

I'm the webmaster for protobiz.com, a small business site. We're providing links from our site to small business resources. We'd like to create a hypertext link to officesuppliestoyourdoor.com. Please let me know if that's acceptable.

Jim@protobiz.com

Payment for referrals is common on the Internet. (See “How to Help People Find You Online,” below.) You should consider every potential source of such income. But the fact that you are a cooperative business needs to be communicated to all potential referral sources. Businesses with active websites understand that offering links to other sites enhances their reputation. And just as in any marketing, you must have a well-run, trustworthy business to continue to rake in recommendations as an interesting and informative site.

Next Century, a third world development consulting firm in Washington, DC, reports that it is listed as a cross-referral in more than 100 Internet sites, all on the basis of mutual reciprocal benefit,

which is a fancy phrase meaning cooperation. About 40 of these links were generated from the original list of potential referrals that Next Century developed when it launched its website. The next 60 came in spontaneously at the rate of one or two a week from other businesses and nonprofits that recognized a cooperative peer.

Before you link to another website, it's a good idea to ask permission. This is also an easy way to make people with whom you would like to be associated aware of your site.

For Love of the Link

Linking to other people and sites and products you like is a virtuous circle, because they will often link back to you, and will also spark your customers to help build your community.

"A lot of websites try to keep people on the site," says Tim O'Reilly, founder of online technological publisher O'Reilly & Associates. "But we've always found it better to serve the users, sending them off to material they find interesting. That tends to make them come back to us, because a good recommendation is as valuable as having the right answer yourself."

And the tactic works in person as well as online. "Similarly, in my talks at lectures and seminars, I often recommend competitors' books," O'Reilly says. "That lets my listeners know that I care more about what they get out of the talk than what I get out of it."

Location Information

Your website is the perfect place to provide clear directions to your business—and to do it in a number of different ways so that the greatest number of potential customers can pinpoint your locale. When you mention your location and show maps and other graphics, include a list

of nearby streets, major points of interest, and landmarks. It is also a good idea to include information about the hows and wheres of parking.

For example, a quick print shop in Berkeley, California, marks its location on its map and also specifies: corner of San Pablo Avenue and University Avenue, corner of Ashby Avenue and San Pablo, University Avenue freeway exit and Ashby Avenue freeway exit—in case someone uses those words while searching online for a print shop. It also lists nearby points of interest: the Berkeley Marina, the 4th Street shopping area, and the Ecology Center. For landmarks, it lists some other well-known businesses nearby: the Fantasy studios, Orchard Supply Hardware, and Takagawa Nursery.

Giving information about your location and directions to your business on your website will become even more important as mobile Internet service becomes more widely used. Internet access is already possible on regular cell phones—allowing users to obtain information such as addresses and phone numbers, directions, business hours, and even movie times. As this becomes more standard, it will become essential that your site offers basic information about your business so that everyone who wants to find you can easily do so.

Valuable Free Information

People go to the Internet primarily for free information—and expect to find it. If you're smart, you'll include a lot of helpful information on your site. In addition to satisfying surfers' expectations, this lets potential customers see for themselves that you are an expert.

For example, Nolo operates a self-help law center at www.nolo.com. The site features lots of information about Nolo books, software, and other products, but it also offers loads of free legal information on common topics such as debts, wills and trusts, small businesses, and real estate.

You don't necessarily have to supply all the information on your site yourself; take advantage of the Web's capacity to link sites to create a robust offering of material. For example, a real estate broker's website might include links to the local Chamber of Commerce site that in turn includes more information about the community, to sites that offer good material on mortgage rates and financing, and to sites that discuss the local school system. People who are looking for a house in the community will be grateful for the leads.

Designing an Internet Site

The Internet is still relatively young, and the format of websites will likely continue to develop for decades. The structure of a book, which evolved over 500 years, helps potential readers know what's in the book and enables them to find what they need quickly. These elements include a cover, with an image, title, and subtitle; a back page with short reviews and recommendations; often, a jacket that contains a 300-word summary and a description of the author; and inside, standard locations for a table of contents, an introduction, a bibliography, a list of other books by the author, and an index.

Similar elements are used in website structure. Already there are some standards in website design, such as home pages and "return home" links on other pages at the site. The following sections describe simple ways to make your website clear and easy to navigate.

Getting Outside Help

Few small businesses owners have the expertise and time to design and maintain their websites. Fortunately, many individuals and companies specialize in offering this service, at a cost that ranges from minimal to expensive. But to invest in these services wisely, the first questions to ask

yourself are what you need and want from your website, and how much you want to spend.

You don't need a lot of bells and whistles—in some businesses, such things can be inappropriate and distracting. As in all business marketing, you have to look at what others in your industry offer and what customers expect. One last warning: Don't put up your site until it's ready. It's very off-putting to surfers to visit a site that informs them it's "under construction."

Our friend Larry, a successful contractor and designer near Santa Rosa, California, has maintained a website since 1994—well before most of his competitors. Originally, he used the Internet primarily to show potential customers his work through his website. In the last several years, however, he has learned to use the Internet and his website more creatively and now gets much of his work through the Internet.

Larry realized that, although some larger contractors had designed useful, attractive websites, most small contractors hadn't put the time or resources into creating a Web presence. As a result, many potential clients didn't search the Web looking for local contractors. Instead, Larry discovered a different way to use the Internet to get business through a company called Servicemagic.com. Servicemagic links people looking for builders with preapproved contractors, subcontractors, and designers. Whenever Servicemagic gets a request for a builder, it sends a bulletin via email to all of its contractors explaining the scope, budget, location, and timing of the project. The first three contractors that respond receive contact information for the project. Larry now gets approximately 80% of his new clients through Servicemagic.

With any potential client he receives through Servicemagic, Larry suggests they look at his website and see if they like his work. If they do, he sets up a meeting and goes from there. If it's a design project, he uses email to send drawings back and forth and to handle a lot of the questions clients have during the process. This works well for many clients who like to communicate after working-hours and on weekends.

At this point, for Larry's business, a simple, low-maintenance site is best. As industry norms change and more people look to the Internet for contractors, he may have to change his approach. For example, he could add a FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions) section to help educate customers while keeping his email traffic down, more information about changes in his field, the latest trends in home building, and tips on remodeling. He might also include links to subcontractors and vendors he recommends.

But even if you do opt to hire outside help in designing your website, know that you should never completely pass the buck. Business owners need to be actively involved in creating and designing their websites—both of which involve critical marketing considerations. This is a key marketing tool for every business: know how it works, hire the best people you can to work on it, check it regularly, and never forget the importance of maintenance.

Your Home Page

A well-designed site starts with an uncluttered main Web page, or “home page,” that has its key message easily readable on the screen. It's also best to present other crucial information on the home page so that it's completely readable without using a bottom or side scroll bar.

In the yellow pages, your listing must present, all at once, the key information your customers may want to know—including hours, locations, and what credit cards are accepted. This is not true of the Internet. Most prospective customers will find your listing by using online search engines, which locate sites that contain words a user enters. A user may search for several words at a time, assigning equal weight to each or giving some a higher priority.

Because your home page is so important, we recommend that you do not include hyperlinks to other sites on this page; people may get lost and never return to your site. In their book *Homepage Usability: 50 Websites Deconstructed* (New Riders Pub.), authors Jakob Nielsen and

Marie Tahir note: “Homepages are the most valuable real estate in the world. Millions of dollars are funneled through a space that’s not even a square foot in size. The homepage’s impact on a company’s bottom line is far greater than simple measures of e-commerce revenues: The homepage is also your company’s face to the world. Increasingly, potential customers will look at your company’s online presence before doing any business with you—regardless of where the actual sale is closed.”

In designing your home page, keep in mind that a prospect delivered there may be looking for something that is on another one of the pages on your site. The home page should therefore explain, indicate, or illustrate what other material is available on your site. In effect, your home page is a table of contents for the rest of your website.

Also keep in mind that it’s important for your site to be clear and useful to all types of visitors. Recall from Chapter 7 that customers and potential customers range from the naive to the expert. Your introductory page should tell both the naive user and the expert what the site offers and where to go to find specific information—without scaring a naive prospect with the expert material, or insulting or boring an expert with the simpler material. It’s often a good idea to show a sample of your home page to a cross section of friends and customers to make sure it appeals to a range of people—and is understandable to all.

The Structure of Your Website

The home page offers a central place from which users can branch out to all the other material at your site. In designing your site, you’ll need to decide which pages are accessible from which other pages—in other words, you need to establish the branching structure by linking certain pages to others. When designing your branching system, keep two simple guidelines in mind:

- Show what is ahead. Let prospects know what tables, charts, inventories, and gold nuggets are still ahead of them.
- Allow users to go back to your home page with one click. Each page should have an easy-to-find “home” or “main menu” button that takes the user back to your home page. It’s crucial that visitors constantly feel oriented and know how to find their way around the site.

The overarching idea is to have viewers feel comfortable and in control when they’re at your site so they stay there, rather than getting frustrated and clicking off to a new site. To this end, be sure to design a branching structure that’s clear and easy to navigate.

Encourage visitors to bookmark your page for future reference. Nearly all Web browsers such as Microsoft’s Internet Explorer, Firefox, Safari, and Opera allow users to create a list of their favorite pages so they can revisit them without having to enter the Web address, also called a URL, for “uniform resource locator.”

It’s very helpful in designing your website to search for businesses similar to yours online and study what works and what doesn’t, using the criteria above.

A Case Study: An Online Realtor Business

When Salli sold her home in California, she decided to explore possible retirement property in Florida. For several months she searched the Web, exploring communities and looking at realtor Web pages. Her search led her to Alison Markham of Exit Reality in Citrus Springs, Florida. Salli was so impressed by Alison's quick response to her inquiry, and her website and service, that she felt totally comfortable hiring Alison even though she was 3,000 miles away.

Alison's business is concentrated primarily on retirees. Her site reflects this and is clear, concise, and does not overload the viewer with an entire repository of information such as library hours, schools, shopping information, and the like. Alison builds trust by not requiring any personal information except for name and email address. She welcomes clients on dial-up or broadband, realizing that people have different equipment and access. Alison also invites phone calls, and the first thing on the home page is an invitation to call seven days a week, with her promise to get back to you within 24 hours.

As she does for all of her prospective clients, Alison immediately made Salli a personal website indicating the criteria for houses she might be interested in, including cost range, bedrooms required, waterfront or not, pool or not, and so on. Alison maintains as many as 200 of these websites at any given time and refreshes them often. (You can visit her website at www.naturecoastliving.com.)

Interactivity and Customer Screening

One of the most interesting marketing attributes of the Internet is that it allows businesses to screen interactions with customers and prospects. Before the Internet, the voicemail branching systems that many of us

hate were the best tool for this purpose. We all recognize that annoying voice that commands: “If you want to talk to a salesperson, press 1. If you want to discuss a billing problem, press 2. If you want to speak to an operator, press 9.” The same thing can be done on your website—but without antagonizing the customer. Customers can search for their information at their own pace and with their own logic.

The interactive potential allows an online business to sort customers who visit the website, directing amateurs to pages that will educate them, and porting experts to pages appropriate for their knowledge level. For example, on an acupuncture clinic’s website, newcomers to the treatment and the site can see a short video segment of a patient being treated, as well as a graphic dictionary of terms, a brief history of this ancient medical art, and testimony from successfully treated patients. Experienced patients and practitioners could be directed to pages with information about the latest studies and developments in the field, and to pages where patients could schedule appointments.

The most important and beneficial use of interactive branching is to bring new prospects exactly to the door of your business. With the right branching system, an architect will, someday soon, answer a phone line and already know that the person on the other end wants to schedule a meeting on Thursday afternoon at 3 p.m. for a half-hour discussion of a 1,000-foot addition to her house at \$120 a square foot, and that the prospect knows the architect’s qualifications. When the two meet, the sale would be 90% complete.

One mechanism that is rarely used in American business for this purpose is to be purposefully obtuse and obscure. In Japan, it is common to find that a master craftsperson or a respected antique dealer has a storefront that is old, dilapidated, and unobtrusive. Only the most sophisticated customers know where to go, so the masters don’t waste time or get involved in the unpleasantness of turning the wrong people away.

The same approach can be used online. Irv Thomas, who sells books and newsletters about simple living to people who are already leading simple lives, uses it on his home page by alerting prospects that they are facing a screening. If they get through, they will probably like the product. He then lists the names of five famous and five obscure people and asks which ones have values that the prospect admires. Picking any of the right three names leads directly to Thomas's core material, and you get an explanation of why those three people are important to Thomas. Picking another three names that are close in values leads to a page that gives clues as to what is appealing about these three names and about the values that would lead the prospect to the core pages. Pick any of the four remaining names, and you are politely told that you would probably find Thomas's material inexplicable and dull.

Making use of interactivity, you can also separate window shoppers from serious prospective clients based on several attributes—including taste, experience, and understanding.

Taste. As amorphous as taste may seem, it is often the key ingredient that makes a customer a good fit with a particular business. A tailor in Hong Kong shows a large sample of fabrics; you pick the ones you like, and he recommends the tailor whose work you are most likely to respond to for fashioning your suits and other apparel. He himself takes the clients who pick conservative fabrics for traditional “English gentlemen’s” suits.

Experience. A marketing research firm sorts by experience when seeking sophisticated clients for a technical methodology that it has perfected. Its Internet offering includes a wide range of political survey data, election results, and statistical analysis programs. Users of two of its most sophisticated statistical analysis programs, a chi square and queue sort, are clearly the highly experienced people to whom it wants to offer its most sophisticated “key issues methodology.” Users of those two programs are offered wide access to databases not known to others and a direct toll-free phone number for free assistance on their projects. Many

of these experienced users of the secret databases have become regular customers of the key issues methodology.

Understanding. The online site of the University of Chicago's Committee on Social Thought contains a good example of sorting by understanding. This reclusive institute holds occasional seminars for a very small number of invited cognoscenti and for the rare person who visits its Internet site and follows the branching lines all the way to the end of a Ph.D. thesis by one of the Committee's alumni. At the end of each thesis is a flashing invitation to the next seminar, with a phone number at which people can obtain the time and location.

How to Help People Find You Online

People will find you on the Internet in many ways. Here are some proactive steps you can take to get your word out.

Get Covered by Search Engines

A primary method that potential customers use to locate businesses online is through search engines such as Google, Ask, and MSN, and with indexes or directories such as Yahoo! Search engine information is accessed by words or phrases; indexes use subjects and categories.

Because search engines use keywords to find you, you need to make a list of keywords and keep adding to it as you think of new ones that are fitting for your business. One friend who sells a menopause product used very general words, such as "women," "health," and "fitness." These words were too vague and did not get prospects to zero in on her company. There were literally hundreds of thousands of other businesses using these words. She needed more specific words such as "workbook," "alternative medical advice," and "estrogen replacement."

Here are some ideas to stimulate your thinking:

- Location—the physical site of your business, towns you serve, nearby landmarks.
- Skills, talents, experience, awards, and degrees.
- Past and present associations and organizations you belong to that are relevant to your business.
- Trade goods, services, and products.
- Employees' names—especially if a customer might want a specific person to perform a service. Betty Sue's Airport Van Service, for example, lists the year and model of the vans in her fleet along with the names of her drivers, in case someone wants a specific driver whose name he or she remembers.
- Relevant numbers—the number of years you've been in business, your address and zip code, your phone number with area code, and your business hours.

Use a thesaurus to find synonyms to all the words you could use to describe your business. Synonyms for “energy,” for example, are power, force, vigor, propulsion, and thrust.

The process of improving the amount of traffic to your website from search engines is called SEO (search engine optimization)—a complicated subject that is outside the scope of this book. Ask friends and do online research to learn more about SEO.

Adwords.google.com

When it comes to listing your business on the Web, check out AdWords .google.com—one of the more popular ways for businesses selling goods and services online to bring people to their site. Google network reaches more than 80% of Internet users.

A cost-per-click listing gives your information to people actively searching online for your types of services and products. You create your ad and then choose keywords that match the ad to your customer. You then bid for these keywords to position your ad. You are only charged for the people that click on your ad, and you can target geographical areas and select from over a dozen different languages.

One of the keys to being successful with Adwords is to frequently monitor what is working and what is not. You can do this by monitoring your Google account. In addition, a good Web host offers a control panel with a statistical analysis of what keywords bring someone in, which pages people enter and leave on, the time of day they entered, and how long they stay. Some Web hosts include this control panel at no additional charge while others charge a nominal fee.

Get Recommended on Other Sites

Other Internet sites may make automatic referrals to your business. For example, publishers of vegetarian cookbooks sometimes list vegetarian retail markets by location. So Green Pastures in Boulder, Colorado, is listed and gets automatic referrals from people who select the listing for Boulder. Green Pastures, which carries a unique line of French homeopathic remedies, also has an automatic referral from the page of the French Wholesale Company, listed under Boulder.

Cultivate Online Recommendations From Users

People participating in online discussion groups constantly make recommendations to other people—and this can be a targeted boon for business. For example, a novice skier looking for equipment might ask others taking part in an online discussion for the name of a helpful ski shop in the Boston area. To get such referrals, you, a friend, a satisfied customer, or an employee must actively participate in the discussion group.

Whether or not you have an online site of your own, it's a good idea to join an online newsgroup or two and participate in discussions about topics that relate to your business. A newsgroup is an online community of people who are interested in a specific topic. They tend to have a narrow focus and can be very useful in certain fields. Your knowledgeable contributions will help you become known as an expert in your field. For example, Tom Hargedon, who used to run a multimedia newsletter and consulting business, regularly got new subscribers and clients from people who knew about him from the hundreds of cogent and valuable comments he made in online discussion groups. These newsgroups—and there are thousands of them—are linked together; you can find those in which you may be interested through Google Groups (<http://groups.google.com>).

When you're ready to post a message or question on a newsgroup, check out its FAQs, or Frequently Asked Questions, before jumping in. It's bad form to advertise your goods or services, but if you just wrote a new program for cabinetmakers, a one-time post is fine because the other people in your cabinetmaker newsgroup would be interested.

Subscribing to a listserver—a kind of electronic newsletter dedicated to a certain topic and delivered via email—is another way to let people know you are around. Subscriptions are usually free.

The better you are known, the more recommendations you will get. And online recommendations travel with lightning speed across the country. For example, Paul B., a Palo Alto, California, physician and an

expert on the social problems of DNA typing, got invited to be an expert witness in a trial when the trial attorney found out about him from a colleague's referral in an online discussion group. The attorney knew of Paul because he is a lawyer who participates in online discussions about genetic issues, including problems with DNA typing, where Paul is a highly respected contributor.

Distribute Your Internet Address

Include your online addresses on all printed, published, and public material—even your outdoor sign if you have one; it's as important as your phone number and return address.

We highly recommend registering a domain name to avoid any problems with having to change your address. An added benefit is that instead of marketing the provider, you are marketing yourself every time someone emails you.

If, instead, you use an address provided to you by your Internet access provider—for example, your business called Cactus Creations has a website hosted by Mindspring, so its URL is www.mindspring.com/cactuscreations—you run the risk of having to change your Web address if you leave that access provider or if it goes out of business.

Keep a list of the places your Internet address is printed or posted, and if that address changes, make updates quickly. Address forwarding programs are still too unreliable to be wholly effective, so it's better to do the job yourself. This is also something to keep in mind when choosing an access provider: Pick one that seems as if it will be around for a while, if you can divine such a thing.

Pay for Referrals

The Internet has many people and businesses offering to link to your site for a fee. When deciding whether to pay for a referral, analyze the question the same way you analyze your listing in the yellow pages. See

what similar people in your business are doing, how long they use the service, and what messages they present to the public.

If you decide to try a paid referral, start with a limited-time arrangement so you can see whether you have the time, energy, and product to handle their inquiries.

Most important, see what company you would be keeping. To be in a referral category offered by less-than-desirable people can be very harmful. The early users of new technology, before government regulation is established, often include a large volume of snake oil peddlers. So use extra caution.

Marketing Manners on the Internet

It's sometimes tough to remember to mind your manners when involved in faceless interactions on the Internet. But good business manners are more important there than anywhere.

A few pointers to help you mind your Ps and Qs:

Do not send unsolicited email. A poll by Harris Interactive in 2000 found that 78% of email users didn't want unsolicited email, and 89% were offended by businesses that use customer browsing information to generate email.

Always give subscribers to your email the option of being removed from your email list.

When giving a link by email, give the URL in plain type in addition to a hyperlink.

Pop-up ads, in front or behind your main page, are in the same category as unsolicited email or spam. Don't consider it. Spam on the Internet is like traditional advertising—most often irritating and ineffective.

Attachments to emails should never be large. And bear in mind that attachments are regularly left unopened due to virus fears and incompatibility of operating systems and browsers.

International Marketing

The Internet has changed the way we need to look at how far our business can reach. Every business should ask itself the question: “Can we do business internationally?” For many, the response will automatically be: “I’m just a one-person cabinetmaker, what does that have to do with international business?” “I’m a masseuse, how could I work overseas?” “I run a photography studio, where is my international market?” Not every business will be able to work internationally, but thanks to the Internet, many more can today than ever before.

As unlikely as it may seem, we know of cabinetmakers, masseuses, and photographers who have picked up international clients and, in a few cases, traveled overseas—expenses paid—to do their business. One example is Michael’s sister, Joan, who is a masseuse. She has worked in Japan, France, and Singapore. Joan is usually invited to travel by a client she treated in the United States. From experience, she has learned that most clients can arrange a free demonstration in their home country, which then generates more than enough business to pay for a trip. Having a massage by a redheaded American professional seems to be a status symbol in many parts of the world.

As you look at the requirements for international Internet business, you may realize that your business too has the potential to expand into an international market.

Prices

If you have a business in the United States, your ability to sell overseas or in Canada will be affected by the exchange rate of the dollar. The dollar’s exchange rate is constantly changing relative to other currencies. As a result, from an international buyer’s point of view, anything sold from America changes prices as the dollar’s exchange rate changes. Depending on which way the value of the dollar goes, this can make the American goods or service look expensive or cheap.

You must keep this in mind when you evaluate your overseas market. For example, Per Madsen of Rackit Systems makes wooden CD holders that sell for \$110 each. The company shipped an order of \$3,800 for CD holders to a customer in Japan. The difference in the exchange rate between the dollar and the yen paid for the \$600 cost of shipping. When the dollar was worth 125 yen, the order looked like a \$4,400 value to the buyer in Japan. When the yen dropped in value relative to the dollar, and one dollar would buy only 105 yen, the order for CD holders dropped in value to \$3,800 from the perspective of the buyer in Japan.

To keep track of when you might have an overseas market for your product, you can keep a file of estimated dollar exchange rates that would allow you to ship your products or deliver your services overseas for the same price as they sell in the United States.

Language and Country

In what country might you be able to sell your product or services over the Internet if the price is right? Start by looking at your search engine and seeing whether your product or service is offered in other English-speaking countries, such as Canada, Australia, Great Britain, and New Zealand. Check the prices and other marketing elements that are comparable to your business. Then check the shipping costs (air and boat) for your product, or the travel costs if you are offering your personal services. This should give you an answer as to whether you should modify your current website to accommodate English-speaking customers in other countries.

If you want to do business over the Internet in any non-English-speaking countries, you can have your website translated into another language. When translating your website into another language, there are certain important things to remember.

First, always use a native speaker in the other language—someone who grew up speaking the language. The subtleties of commerce in other cultures are far too great for a person who is not native to understand.

As an example, Starbucks opened coffee shops in Japan using a Japanese partner and created one of its most successful overseas ventures. Peets, on the other hand, used a Chinese partner to open its shops in Japan and failed with its first few stores in Tokyo. Neither Peets management nor their Chinese partner understood the subtleties of Japanese culture. You should have the same quality translator for updating your website. Maintenance of a website is so important that a website should never be put up unless preparations for its maintenance are fully complete.

Translate all the necessary emails and shipping information for a postsale exchange of data. Examples include a “thank you for your order” email, a shipping date and confirmation email, and anything else pertinent to the sale.

Add any necessary information that is specific to the country you are selling into via your website. If your product meets only American technical standards, say so and give the technical standards. If your product has any important temperature, humidity, or shock or vibration restrictions, put that information on the website. The same applies to skills and professional experience—not all licenses and certifications are recognized in other countries.

A House Gift From Siberia

Michael bought a birch bark breadbasket from Siberia for \$70 as a house present for a friend. It wasn't the price that mattered to him—what Michael wanted to know was if the present would arrive on time and be of high quality. The Siberian store website contained all the information that Michael needed to feel comfortable making the order and, sure enough, the gift arrived on time and in perfect condition.

Management

You may have to deal with management changes if you market over the Internet internationally. Be prepared to cope with the changes that often follow from a successful international Internet marketing program. You want to be able to maintain your business standards in a foreign country and not be perceived by the American press or anyone else as an exploiter.

Make sure your company is prepared for the added burden that an international market will undoubtedly create. Management will have new things to learn and understand, including cultural differences, recourse procedures over large distances, international trade customs, and traffic practices. If the management of your business is stretched to its limits right now—unable to take vacations, working most Sundays, and sleeping poorly—don't take on the additional burden of international Internet sales.

Finally, proceed slowly in adding new countries and new cultures. Each addition requires almost as much management time as the first country and culture.

Blogs for Your Business

A blog is an interactive site on the Internet where individuals or businesses post daily or weekly comments and get responses from their readers. For marketing purposes, company blogs can be extremely effective in providing expertise and up-to-date information to an interactive base of customers. There are risks too, though, so think carefully before creating a business blog.

In engineering and product development, a company blog can be particularly useful because customer-users of a new product can use the company's blog to describe their product usage experience to the company developers. Consultants and other service providers can get the same type of feedback from their public business blogs. With expert blogs, outsiders can interact with company insiders on specialty and technical issues. While expert blogs can wander far from the direct interests of the business, they can also be useful as a source of new employees and new ideas. A good example is the Tinbasher blog (www.butlersheetmetal.com/tinbasherblog), which lists more than 75 related business blogs in the metalworking industry.

Expert blogs play an important role in attracting new customers and maintaining involvement with interested customers. Bloggers cross-reference each other, providing a powerful and credible voice in the market for your business. If you have an in-house expert who would enjoy blogging, you should consider whether it would be beneficial for your business to have him create an expert blog. Experts can give outside lectures and teach courses, all of which can be to a business's benefit. A blog is high on the list of public forums for experts.

Should My Company Create a Business Blog?

When considering whether to start a business blog, first survey what's already out there in your industry. (Check out technorati.com to get started.) If you can't do as well or be as interesting as the norm in your field, don't start your own blog. To create your own blog, you should be able to answer Yes to all three of the following questions:

1. Do I or a fellow company employee have a passion for writing a blog? For a blog to be functional it must always show a recent entry, one that indicates an entry for at least the current month and preferably the current week. Otherwise the blog is considered outdated and untended.
2. Will the blog always be maintained? Blogs must be current—dead blogs that have not been removed can be interpreted as evidence that the business no longer exists. Blogs are hard to remove because search engines can refer to a blog for years after the blog has been removed. If you must discontinue a blog, you need to offer a good explanation for referring the reader to another site.
3. Do you have the management time to deal with a blog? Think of a blog as more time-consuming than hiring and directly supervising a new person. If you don't get much sleep now, you will get much less if your company has a blog or bloggers.

If you answer Yes to all of these questions, a blog is a good way to create a dialogue with existing and potential customers.

Setting up your blog is relatively easy. We recommend using one of the many online services that host them such as typepad.com, blogger.com, or wordpress.com. It generally takes minutes to set up, and you can link the blog to your company's existing website and vice versa.

Ask the editors and publishers at the *Sacramento Bee* what happened when one of their reporters started his own blog. One of the newspaper's regular columnists, Dan Weintraub, started his own political blog, which was more opinionated and had more inside information than his regular, published newspaper column. Weintraub's blog became a hit in the Internet world, with far more readers than the *Sacramento Bee* had in its local serving area. One time, Weintraub wrote a blog column that his editor objected to. Afterwards, the editor told Weintraub he had to get prior editorial review before publishing any future blog entries. When the blog world learned of the editorial restraint on Weintraub, the *Sacramento Bee's* management was overwhelmed with public attacks on the newspaper's commitment to First Amendment rights. Management spent a lot of resources on the matter—one that they were sure to lose in the public opinion polls. This is not an uncommon situation. A business blog has personal qualities that are different from a corporate image, which inevitably creates a management dilemma and time-consuming management commitment. ●

Dynamic Interactive Marketing

Beginning Architecture	272
Attracting Customers.....	273
Attracting Newcomers	273
Personal Recommendations	273
The Look and Feel of Your Site.....	274
Pricing	276
Personalized Pricing.....	276
Marginal Pricing.....	278
eBay and Supplemental Outlet Sites.....	280
Customer Education	280
Customer Comments.....	282
Security.....	282
Technical Protection.....	283
Personnel Access.....	284
Storing Information.....	284
Site Reliability.....	285
Podcasting	286
Video Clips	286
Putting Your Video Clips On a Public Website.....	287
Technology.....	288
Maintenance.....	288

E-commerce sales hit \$136.4 billion in 2007, according to the U.S. Department of Commerce. This did not include travel booked online, which is a huge market on its own. The most successful businesses on the Internet are dynamic. On them, as examples, users can search for the flights they want and buy tickets; find the books and CDs they want and order them, as well as request recommendations for additional books and CDs likely to interest them; place bids; or sell products. This chapter deals with the marketing aspects of creating an interactive website.

Beginning Architecture

An interactive website has an architecture—usually represented by a drawing indicating the flow of customers as they move through the site.

A Web architectural drawing shows the connections between pages of your website. There are notations in the drawing for each hyperlink on the page; a hyperlink or “link” is the term for a clickable image or text that takes the user to a new page. In order for your website visitors to reach all pages of your site, the pages must be connected by a network of links. These connections should be examined during the design phase and later tested to make sure that your customers can easily navigate your website. Nearly all customers who end up on pages that confuse them or have no obvious link to take them to a useful page, including a “help” page, will quickly go away. Making your site intuitive and easy to use will help keep customers on your site longer and will bring them back for return visits.

It pays to be painstaking. The architectural design phase of a website is a critical phase that deserves careful attention. Errors caught early usually cost less than errors that appear late in the development process. Errors found at the operational stage are almost always costly.

Attracting Customers

A second function of an architectural website drawing is to track the potential movements of different kinds of customers.

Attracting Newcomers

First-time visitors are your most important target market. Everyone must be a first-time visitor at some point. Even a visitor who is a regular customer in the non-Internet world is a first-time visitor to your website at least once.

Your home page must answer nearly every new visitor's questions about your business, including:

- Who are you?
- What do you offer?
- What is on your website?
- What can I do here?
- Will I be satisfied?
- What can I do if my questions are not answered here?

It's important that you answer all these questions—and that you do it mostly in the top half of the page.

Personal Recommendations

Thousands of casual and accidental visitors may find you on the Internet, and you will have many opportunities to turn many of them into customers if they are looking for something specific that you offer.

But personal recommendations are what you want—and what will likely be the prime source for your business. Bear in mind that the entire website and the service or product you provide are the basis for getting each customer to tell other people how good you are.

Six Seconds to Download and Other Useful Tips

A few practical quick tips can save you much angst when establishing the look and feel of your new website.

- Make your home page simple so that it downloads quickly; 60% of Web surfers bail from a site in six seconds.
- Include a tag line “contact us” page for customers who wonder where you are located or prefer to contact you by snail mail. Enough people still prefer the telephone, so be sure to include your phone number.
- Avoid horizontal scrolling.
- Put your logo on the upper-left corner and use it on all your pages with a link back to the home page.
- If you provide information that people might want to copy, provide a quick print feature on your website.
- Provide an “email to a friend” feature.

The Look and Feel of Your Site

Every page and every element on every page is relevant. The screen in front of the customer is many things all at once: your store, your product, your reputation, your billboard, your neighborhood, and your address.

Review norms in your industry before beginning your own design process. But because the Internet is a new form of business, those norms should be less of a constraint for you than a place to gather ideas. A product normally has to look like other products that do the same thing: a school carries prior expectations in students’ minds: and shoppers expect a set look and feel in a traditional store. This is less true for dynamic interactivity.

Your Window to the Cyberworld

Give each page on your site a distinct window title. Window titles guide search engines to your site and are the default bookmark—and, importantly, some search engines use these titles in their search results and to determine relevancy.

Window titles should convey the most information in the fewest words.

Use your company name and a short description— fewer than 64 characters is best. For example: “Smolinski Construction: new homes, remodels” or “Brown Stevens—organic vegetables and flowers.”

Honesty is, of course, an essential policy. Make sure that your site reflects the reality of your business so that customers don’t come away feeling duped. But remember that the Internet is your opportunity to creatively market your business by choosing the design and graphics that suit your unique product or service.

Telling Them When It Does Not Compute

There are a myriad of reasons that some part of your site might not be working at any moment. This is especially true when a new site is created or changes are made to an existing site.

Make it your business to know what error messages your customers see—and be sure they make sense. Most do not.

And use the messages as a way to communicate with your customers—for example, to include constructive information they would find helpful.

Constantly review your site to eliminate clunky error messages. An error message can be a sure sign of your incompetence to some clients and can be a sure sign of the customer’s incompetence to some customers. Neither is a good sign.

Pricing

In addition to all standard marketing pricing considerations, straightforward complete packages, small segmented packages, and customer control over price combinations, the dynamic Internet offers two unique forms of pricing that have not been a common part of commerce before: personalized pricing and marginal pricing.

Personalized Pricing

Personal pricing involves an adjustment based on something unique you offer in reciprocation or in addition to money paid for a product or service. You might already have been an unwitting participant in personalized pricing when entering into an informal sale with someone you know. For example, a friend may have reduced the price of a rug she wanted to sell because you have a reputation for paying promptly—or boosted the cost because you are known to be lax about paying installments. Or another friend who is a wallpaper hanger may have agreed to do the room borders free because you agreed to watch his toddler while the work was being done.

The Internet offers exciting opportunities for personalized pricing, even to customers who technically remain strangers. Your database can keep information about customers that allows you to interact just as though you had the knowledge about them that a friend might have.

This opens a vast new realm of business where commercial genius will emerge in forms unknown in human history. Be expansive, be creative, go wild in thinking about your pricing potentials. To jog your thinking, ask yourself this: What is the most helpful way I can modify prices for a friend?

A few examples might help, too.

- You sell swimming accessories. A potential customer enters your site to search for special speed swimming goggles to use in salt

water. Judging by the pages that the potential customer looks at, you surmise that he or she is a master swimmer. You can offer the goggles at a lower price when the sale is combined with several other products that experienced swimmers customarily buy.

- A potential customer comes to your site to design a graphic artist's desk that you custom manufacture. After the prospect has stumbled through the design process, indicating inexperience with furniture assembly and design, you can offer the customer a discounted price for a partially assembled desk. The result is more likely to make the final assembly easier for the customer—and you have the opportunity to say just that.
- A visitor to your site is trying to price the cost of cleaning the carpet and drapes at her home. As she works her way through the site indicating the size of her rooms and the materials used in her carpets and drapes, you can offer a surprise discount because a particular material is easier to clean—and explain your reasoning. You can also suggest a special extra treatment that would be included free in the cleaning if the sale reaches a threshold of importance to you.

Turning Japanese

In Japan, nearly every sales transaction includes a modest gift. A large cosmetic sale ends with a small gift of a sample perfume bottle. A purchase of art supplies ends with a gift of a sheet of wild colored stamps.

On the Internet, think about what your customer is buying; throw in a small but thoughtful gift. If it's a book of poetry, throw in a bookmark with a poem by a relevant poet. If it's a recipe for an elegant cake that you sell online, add a photo sample of frosting designs. If it's the sale of an online photograph of some special landscape, include a free page that tells the geological history of the landscape.

Marginal Pricing

“Marginal” in this context comes from the economic use of the word. The first four products sold cover the cost of the total fixed overhead costs such as leases and wages plus the variable costs such as supplies; therefore, the fifth product is the marginal product that need only cover the variable costs.

The best current example of marginal pricing on a website is at Amazon.com. When you buy a product at Amazon, you are offered some additional examples of related products you might want to buy that will often result in free shipping.

Another example is airline pricing, which is almost entirely based on marginal costs. The discount ticket you get a week or more in advance is based on selling seats for a flight that already has enough customers paying full price to cover the fuel, maintenance, wage, and overhead costs of the flight. Sometimes there are no discount tickets left on a flight two months away because the airline knows that the flight will be filled with customers who are paying full fare.

If airlines could sell tickets at the gate in the last ten minutes for very low prices to fill up the plane, they would. And if they knew for sure they could satisfy the purchase needs of their regular customers and not run out of supplies, grocers would sell all the products that spoil each day for lower and lower prices as the day wore on. But they don't, because they don't have the near-omniscience that the Internet provides.

Nearly every business owner could imagine a creative role for marginal pricing made possible by the database information the Internet provides.

A few examples might help here, too.

- You sell a specialized medical analysis at your website. If a customer returns for a second visit, you can offer a discount on your email newsletter. The price discount is based on your experience that return customers are most likely to recommend new customers. You could also offer the newsletter at a reduced price to those who sign up for an automatic payment plan, because that lowers your overhead.
- You sell design plans for gardening that incorporate specific micro-climate elements. Return customers can be given discounts on a range of extra consulting services because you already have created a detailed database on them that will help you excel at providing them with relevant information.
- You are a service that sells music over the Internet. You can offer a regular discount to customers who have returned a few times if they are willing to download your specialized music transfer program that greatly reduces the online time for each future sale.

The Good News Is That Good News Travels Fast, Too

You have the same people around you in the Internet world that you have in any business: employees, suppliers, clients, and competitors. The Internet makes it easier than ever to spread harmful gossip and negative word of mouth—common human foibles.

One of the colossal failures to crash and burn on the Internet was WorldCom, a multibillion-dollar corporation that owned a major telecommunications backbone of the Internet. Long before its management was publicly dishonored for dishonesty, self-dealing, and accounting fabrication, a website detailed the horrible treatment WorldCom offered its employees, suppliers, advisers, and competitors. Bad news travels faster than ever. But so does news of an Internet business that is scrupulously run.

eBay and Supplemental Outlet Sites

While many businesses exist and thrive on their own eBay site with large mail order sales, there are also many sites that use eBay as a supplemental outlet for sales of their regular line of products, and their sale or closeout items. Don't underprice the same product or service on eBay that you offer locally or in a bricks and mortar store. Word gets out very fast on the Internet and it will hurt your business to be seen as duplicitous on price. Don't even appear to be duplicitous—such as selling the purple scarf for less than the green one—customers do not consider color differences to warrant different pricing.

eBay is well organized and provides, for a fee, the software for accounting, payment, and inventory features. Here are a few things to keep in mind when selling on eBay:

- Photos are vital—post photos of your products if at all possible.
- Written descriptions should be clear and comprehensive.
- Check out the competition on other eBay sites and compare your products and pricing to other sellers.
- Use references and endorsements by other customers. eBay rewards good service and punishes bad service based on customer ratings. Most eBay sellers put a great deal of effort in dealing with every single complaint and trying to turn it around into a recommendation.
- Don't violate eBay's rules regarding bidding (sellers are not allowed to bid on their own items).

Customer Education

All of the elements of education that are discussed in Chapter 7 exist in the dynamic Internet and can be far more precisely tailored to each site visitor.

Be attuned to customers as they move down each branch—and be prepared to answer four questions:

1. What do customers who got this far need to know about my business? If you are in the lighting design business, for example, you can let customers interested in a particular lamp know that you carry several different voltage systems for countries outside the United States.

2. What does my business do that the customer may not know about? For example, the electrical parts one company sells meet a wide range of engineering specifications of interest to many buyers. It can showcase a photo of a part that survived a lightning storm, was easy to clean after being in a flood, or has a specification that assures a lifespan of 100 years.

3. What interesting, useful, and unusual information can I offer about my company, service, or products? Again, a site selling electrical parts could show photos of a nuclear submarine that uses one of the heavy-duty parts, or an astronomical observatory that uses one of its motors to drive a special infrared mirror.

4. Have I examined all groups of people likely to reach each segment of my site? This is vital. Some people will need more information, and some people will demand shortcuts to navigate your site faster. Only a dynamic site can offer this opportunity and can keep track of the types of customers progressing through the site and their individual needs. Use the “Categories of Potential Customers” chart in Chapter 7 for specific help.

When Salli was looking for an elegant restaurant in the Bay Area to celebrate her anniversary, she asked a few trusted friends for their recommendations and then went online to see for herself. All of the restaurants had a website, but the one that impressed Salli the most was Restaurant Gary Danko (Garydanko.com) in San Francisco. The site exuded luxury, comfort, and intimate elegance. There were photos of the immaculate kitchen and a 360-degree virtual tour of the restaurant. What truly set the website apart was the narrated still-photo tutorial of the chef

demonstrating his techniques and giving you the option to print out the recipes from the site.

Customer Comments

If it is appropriate for your business, you should consider having one or more comments sections. More comment sections if you offer multiple products or services. In some cases you will want a rating system. We highly recommend providing a way for customers to comment on your website and rate your business if it is possible. The following data (from a Bazaarvoice and iPerceptions study of CompUSA customers published in August 2006) give the reason a comment section on a website is so important:

“Surveyed shoppers indicated that both positive and negative reviews helped them make the right purchase decision for their needs. Some shoppers even stated that they consult ratings and reviews before making every online purchase.

“Repeat customers considered ratings and reviews more important (86%) than one-time buyers (82%), underscoring the value of ratings and reviews in fostering customer loyalty and repeat purchase behavior.

“Highly qualified shoppers—those who indicated that they were “very likely” or “somewhat likely” to make a purchase—considered ratings and reviews more important (85%) to their decision process than those who were unlikely to purchase (70%).

“Younger shoppers consider ratings and reviews more important than older shoppers do. Importance was highest (88%) for the “less than 18” segment and lowest (70%) for the “45 and older” segment.”

Security

There are four main security issues. One concerns the technical protection of your database information—especially if it contains

financial, credit card, or highly private material. The second relates to personnel access. The third concerns the safe storage of your material. And the fourth is the pure reliability of your site functioning.

Technical Protection

Website security is a large and expanding field. For most business purposes, the common form of security is known as SSL (Secure Sockets Layer). Many websites use this protocol to provide secure communications on the Internet for such things as Web browsing, email, Internet faxing, instant messaging, and other data transfers. By convention, websites that require an SSL connection start with *https:* instead of *http:*. Security is generally provided by your ISP server through one of a few large separate international security providers such as Verisign and ScanAlert. There is usually an annual fee for the security feature. Make sure your ISP server is vigilant and proactive and has a plan to deal with the consequences if security is compromised.

We cannot give you advice on the grand variety of technical issues involved in protecting your website and your database. Many commercial entities claim good security for the issues of general access to your site—and many more are quickly entering the picture. Ask a number of people, including your ISP, for their opinions.

Be skeptical of database providers that claim complete security: They almost act as magnets to attract felonious computer hackers. Once again, ask for recommendations for those in your industry, and give special consideration to uncommon database systems that may be of little interest to hackers.

In addition to having an excellent security system, your business should also maintain an exceptional website that provides many options for your consumers to order products or reach your business to ask questions. Customers get nervous, for example, if there is no way they can reach a person should they make a mistake.

The website of Hammacher Schlemmer, a purveyor of unique gifts, explains the ordering process every step of the way and explains how the customer can call or mail the company with questions. Each time the customer is asked for information—such as the item number of the item being ordered—there is a link that explains why this information is needed. The website makes ordering easy. And they test the website daily, as shown by the “Hacker Safe Tested Daily” emblem on the bottom of the Web page.

Personnel Access

No matter what technical security you are using, the people who work with your system may have access to parts of the site containing confidential customer information. You must apply traditional business rules for confidential information.

Letting Them Crow

On your website, you can include photos and comments of appreciative customers and friends.

Technical letters of appreciation and awards can appear right where they matter. And you can use them as good reflections on your customers. After a customer selects a unique wine from your vintage cellar, for example, you can congratulate him or her for choosing the wine that won a First Place national award.

Storing Information

Computers crash. That is a fact. Electric utility companies turn off the electricity without warning. Floods blow and earthquakes shake unannounced. And a database disaster can never be avoided by paying an insurance premium, since angry customers don't care if you are insured.

All data in the database needs to be backed up in a variety of ways—and you're foolhardy to go public until all these systems are go.

Site Reliability

If you have a dynamic Internet site, your business is being transacted online, all the time. There is no time to close the shop and clean up if a messy problem develops. With this awareness, you must be prepared to deal in advance with inevitable glitches in the site so that you can restore customers' confidence as quickly as possible.

Have a system to inform customers in the dire circumstances when you can't operate. Do you have a mailing list to inform everyone what the problem is in real time? Do you have an alternate URL site where you can explain the problem and ask forgiveness?

Have a mechanism in place and a direction to users: "If page fails to redirect in ten seconds click here."

Also, rehearse how to deal with the problems that might develop where part of your site fails and customers halfway through a transaction or nearly finished can be informed that their data has been lost and they must start over.

Jacquie Lawson, creator of a wonderful e-card business, dealt with her huge holiday season volume problem by posting on her home page the following message:

"DELAYS TO POSTAL PAYMENTS. If you are waiting for a new membership or renewal and have posted a cheque or cash to us, please note that there have been significant delays in delivery owing to the Christmas holiday, which in the UK meant that there were no postal deliveries at all from December 25th to December 28th. We are processing payments as quickly as we can, but we are still getting mail with postmarks dating from mid-December. We expect to have all payments received and cleared within the next few days." (See JacquieLawson.com.)

Podcasting

A podcast is an online audio file commonly accessed through software such as iTunes or Podcast Alley. The biggest and best-known accumulations of podcasts is on Apple's iTunes. Most businesses use iTunes to broadcast podcasts, and we recommend you go there first to see what others in your field are broadcasting. When a user selects an audio file, the file is downloaded to the user's computer and can be played either on the computer or a portable device.

Some podcasts are short, around three minutes in length. Others resemble radio programs in length. Many use the interview format. Some large businesses such as *The Wall Street Journal* (<http://online.wsj.com>) provide daily podcasts, while other companies podcast weekly. Creating podcasts can be a lot of work: you'll need to come up with the content (what you're going to talk about) and have the podcasts posted on your website. Although not technically difficult to produce, successful podcasts are broadcast at regular intervals. Unless podcasts are generated in the course of business you should carefully consider whether you want to commit to broadcasting regularly.

Video Clips

If moving graphic images are relevant to the marketing of your business it's time to explore video clips for your website. The most common moving graphic is a video clip, but moving graphics can also come in the form of changing photos, animation, and images that continually refresh. There are a variety of programming technologies to create non-video moving graphics including Flash and Java. If you see a website that you consider a good model of nonvideo moving graphics make a note of it and use it as an example for your own.

One of the more effective animated business graphics we have seen is for a specialty sports clothing store in Tokyo that shows how to fold a short-sleeve T-shirt in a single two-handed movement. The website attracts many visitors and a variety of the site's relevant products are shown next to the moving graphic image.

Paul Domalesky, a San Francisco-based massage therapist who specializes in helping a wide range of clients, uses video clips on his website to demonstrate his techniques. Paul uses his video clips in a very subtle way that is appropriate to his massage service and helpful for potential clients who are curious about his practice. (<http://sfrealmassage.com>)

Putting Your Video Clips On a Public Website

There are many websites that are open to the public that use video clips and moving graphic images—YouTube (www.youtube.com) is one of the most popular sites. It is hard to separate the material on these sites from advertising and from the disproportionate amount of material that is silly personal behavior or private attention-seeking uploads.

The inherent nature of advertising is that it is indiscriminate, it is *broadcast*. Effective marketing when, directed at the public, is a listing: information at a place or time when the prospective customer is looking for the information.

You can put video clip material in public places for effective marketing in the rare instances where you provide some information, skill, or technology that is unique to your business. In that context you can refer interested parties to your actual website and you can, where possible and effective, repeat the video clip on your site. A good example of this is the posting of some rare 1960s martial arts footage by original masters in China with a reference to a disciple of one of the masters in Texas.

Technology

The technology of Internet video is constantly changing. Part of the required maintenance of any website is staying current on the newest video media that have a small but growing market share, and changes to the major media products. At the time of this revision, most businesses using Internet video are using the Flash video format. Flash files end in .flv. The widespread use of Flash video clips on browsers has been a major factor in the expanded use of video clips on Web pages.

Your original videos can be made in any number of media standards, including the main popular formats of QuickTime (.mov) and Microsoft Media (.wmv). Videos can be converted to Flash files before being put on your website. Flash is different from the main video formats in that it is used at the browser level (examples of two leading browsers are Internet Explorer and Mozilla's Firefox).

Maintenance

As with all marketing material, the video clips on your website must be kept up to date and show evidence of care and attention. This is particularly true for video clips because the technical quality of Internet video is undergoing constant improvement. New compression technology is steadily improving the quality of video and new technology is expanding the venues for viewing video. People can see the difference and they judge a business by the quality of its marketing material. ●

Designing and Implementing Your Marketing Plan

Your Marketing List: The “Who” of Your Marketing Plan.....	290
How to Evaluate Your List.....	292
Marketing Actions and Events: The “What” of Your Marketing Plan	294
Direct Marketing Actions.....	297
Sampling as a Direct Marketing Technique	298
Giving Customers a Little Extra.....	301
Product Demonstrations as a Direct Marketing Technique	304
Classes as a Direct Marketing Technique	305
Follow-Up as a Direct Marketing Technique.....	308
Parallel Marketing Actions	310
Samples and Offers as Parallel Marketing.....	311
Demonstrations as Parallel Marketing.....	313
Follow-Up as Parallel Marketing.....	315
Peer-Based Marketing Actions	317

A marketing action plan for your business should include three basic elements. The first is the statement describing your business, which you completed in Chapter 7. Now it's time for you to design the next two, which we call the *who* and *what* of your marketing effort. Let's start by briefly defining the rather shorthand terms “*who*” and “*what*”:

- The *who* of your action plan is simply a list of the people you already know who are in a good position to recommend your business to their friends and acquaintances. Of course, this includes a list of your customers.
- The *what* of your action plan is the list of marketing actions and events that will stimulate the people on your list to actually make recommendations.

Before we get into specifics, be aware that your general objective in designing a good marketing plan is to give your customers, associates, and prospects a sense of participation in your business. When done well, this allows you to share your sense of excitement at the same time that you enhance trust in your business. If you can accomplish this, you can significantly increase the desire and willingness of a large number of people to recommend your business to their friends.

Marketing events bring life to your business—and add a constant source of fun to it, too.

Your Marketing List: The “Who” of Your Marketing Plan

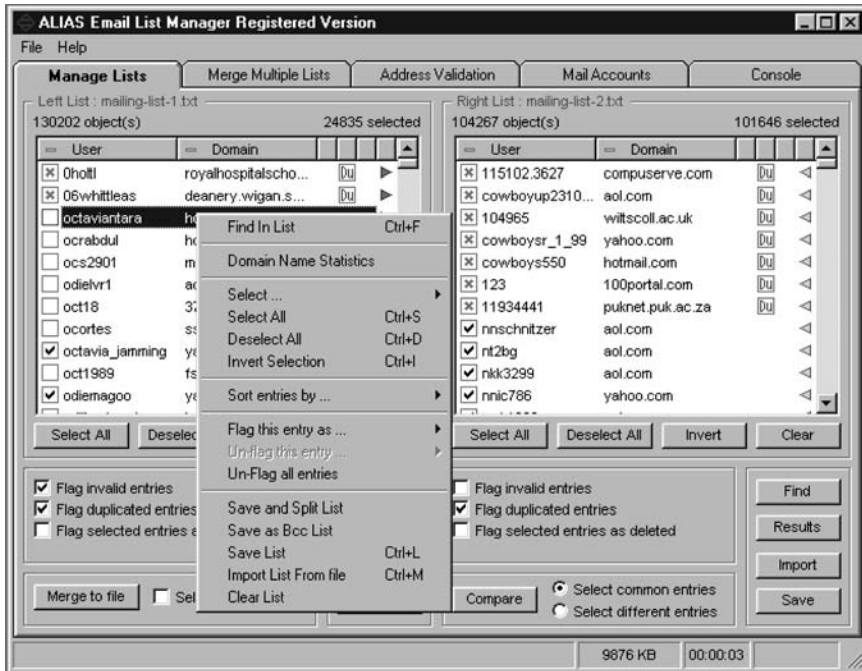
One of the most important marketing tools available to the small businessperson who wants to expand and revitalize a business is an up-to-date master list of customers, prospects, suppliers, friends, and people in the community who can help spread the word. To create such a list, start by gathering all the names on your invoices, ledger cards, mailing

lists, email messages, personal checks you have accepted, customer sign-up sheets, electronic handheld device, and so on. Some businesses add to their lists by offering a prize and holding a drawing; the entry forms include the customer's cell phone number, email, and postal addresses. This technique is particularly effective at trade shows, malls, and other locations where a large number of interested people are gathered. We feel it is important to make it clear when you add new people to your list, that they will from time to time receive emails and mailings. There is no benefit in spending postage and adding to junk email by sending information to people who aren't interested.

Your marketing list should include names, email and postal addresses, phone numbers, and what, if any, goods and services the customers received, along with appropriate dates. Where possible, and depending on your business, include personalized comments and notes as to who referred the people or how they heard about you. The general rule is that if you deal with a few important customers you should go out of your way to be personal, but if you sell a lot of goods and services in small units, collecting extensive personal information isn't feasible.

Whatever method you currently use for storing your list, we recommend transferring relatively small lists—fewer than 300 names—to index cards and alphabetizing them with one name per card, even if doing this duplicates a computer list. The physical presence of this box of cards is a powerful reminder to use it. However, if your list is over 300 names, then a computer database will be necessary. The technology now exists to scan business cards directly into your computer or digital handheld.

Here is a sample index card that has worked for businesses we advise:



How to Evaluate Your List

The purpose of the following checklist is to determine how much, if any, work is needed for your list to be usable.

Your Marketing List

Your marketing list was last updated:

☐ 6 months ago ☐ 1 year ago ☐ 2 years ago ☐ 3 or more years ago

A complete list of your customers, suppliers, prospects, business associates, relevant acquaintances, and peers is available for an immediate mailing, phone invitation, or email contact. ☐ YES ☐ NO

If Yes, how current are your addresses?

customers

EXCELLENT

☐

ADEQUATE

☐

NEEDS MORE WORK

☐

suppliers

☐
☐
☐

prospects

☐
☐
☐

business associates

☐
☐
☐

acquaintances

☐
☐
☐

peers

☐
☐
☐

How current are your phone numbers?

customers

☐
☐
☐

suppliers

☐
☐
☐

prospects

☐
☐
☐

business associates

☐
☐
☐

acquaintances

☐
☐
☐

peers

☐
☐
☐

How current are your email addresses?

customers

☐
☐
☐

suppliers

☐
☐
☐

prospects

☐
☐
☐

business associates

☐
☐
☐

acquaintances

☐
☐
☐

peers

☐
☐
☐

If No, how long would it take you to make a list?

customers

_____ hours

suppliers

_____ hours

prospects

_____ hours

business associates

_____ hours

acquaintances

_____ hours

peers

_____ hours

Starting now, you are compiling these records from ...

☐ checks

☐ customer records

☐ form letters

☐ supplier records

☐ organization membership lists

☐ your personal address book

☐ email messages

☐ personal organizer

☐ other _____

Marketing Actions and Events: The “What” of Your Marketing Plan

Once you generate a list of your marketing community, the next step is to plan marketing actions. These actions should generally fall into three categories:

- direct,
- parallel, and
- peer-based.

Together, these make up the “what” of your marketing plan. Let’s first define these terms by looking at how a small school of modern dance might use each to mount a good marketing effort designed to stimulate personal recommendations. (Chapter 14 gives several examples from each of these categories to show how year-long marketing plans are actually planned.)

- **Direct Marketing:** For a dance school, a good illustration of direct marketing is holding a performance by advanced students at the school. All students would be encouraged to invite their friends and family, and the school would send a notice to school alumni and friends and arrange for appropriate publicity in the dance community.
- **Parallel Marketing:** The dance school selects people from its marketing list and invites them to be guests at a local performance by a touring dance company known to do innovative work.
- **Peer-Based Marketing:** The dance school gives a reception for a visiting out-of-town artist/performer and invites the people on its list, including a wide cross section of the local dance and arts community.

All businesses should carefully consider each of these broad community-based marketing approaches. Of course, depending on your business, there are many—often hundreds—of possibilities in each of the three

categories. Often, good ones become annual events that customers and friends look forward to. Christmas parties and business open houses are a popular version of this type of marketing. So are free ice cream cones for children's birthdays from the local ice cream shop. But because they are so common, and because they are not designed with intentional information content, they are not nearly as effective.

Marketing for Wholesalers Who Use Middlepersons

Many businesses have no direct contact with their final buyers. If you use representatives (reps) or sell through distributors and retailers, you will probably want to direct most of your marketing activity at the people who actually buy from you. However, if you have the opportunity to deal directly with the final buyer, we advise you to take it. This doesn't mean that you should ignore your reps, just that you should try to develop alternative marketing strategies.

If your business uses reps, try to help them sell more of your product. One example is a jeweler we know who sells primarily through sales reps but still regularly sends a newsletter to the buyers at all her major store accounts. The newsletter is primarily graphic; one issue showed some unusual contemporary fashions and how her jewelry is worn with them, and another highlighted interesting window and counter displays featuring her jewelry. In one issue, she included a small card with a chart that converted millimeter measurements to the $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch measurements used in the jewelry business. Because the newsletter complemented the activities of the reps and didn't threaten them, the reps were happy to have the supplier actively helping in the sales process.

Marketing for Wholesalers Who Use Middlepersons (cont'd)

You may decide, however, that you can do better without reps. For example, a woolen mill in western England faced a disastrous decline in its business, caused in part by softer, higher-quality imports. Instead of closing down, as many other woolen mills have done, it reversed its decline by eliminating all of its reps and relying solely on one salesperson plus an innovative marketing strategy. Part of this strategy consisted of inviting customers to visit the factory and to stay in a local 300-year-old inn. People loved the idea and came from as far away as Japan and Canada.

The owners of the mill introduced each customer to the women on the production line, allowing time for informal interaction as well as in-depth discussion of the process of turning wool into fabric. The customers found that the factory could create a far wider range of custom fabrics than they had realized. Several customers who used the fabric in the upholstery business were able to redesign some of the material to better fit their needs. And by changing some procedures, new markets were created in the sporting goods field. This increase in business could not have happened had the mill worked exclusively through middlepersons.

We believe this lesson is valuable to almost every business. Your customers, especially since they are in business themselves, know what they need better than any rep (who is, after all, in the “rep” business), and often better than you do.

Sometimes the problem of middlepersons is difficult to avoid. Frances Peavey published a book, *Heart Politics* (Pluto Press, 2000), about community organizing for social change. This is the kind of book that rarely gets widely reviewed. In other words, book reviewers—the middlepersons of the book world—weren’t likely to be of much help if she simply mailed out review copies. Frances circumvented this bottleneck by doing her own publicity and direct selling to churches and peace groups.

Marketing for Wholesalers Who Use Middlepersons (cont'd)

Frances also put some thought into how she could get the middlepersons to pay attention to her product. During the annual American Booksellers' Association convention, which most major book reviewers from all over the country and close to 20,000 book industry people attend, Frances got a part-time job as a taxi driver. She kept her cab in front of the convention hall during the entire week of the convention, making it a point to get into conversations with passengers about her books. A few of these were reviewers, and many others knew reviewers and were so struck by the creativity of her approach that they provided introductions. Frances met more than a dozen book reviewers, representing major newspapers as well as a few key magazines. They all promised to review her book. Most of them did.

Let's now look at each of the categories in more detail to help inspire you when you create your own list of actions.

Direct Marketing Actions

Once you have a list of clients, suppliers, friends, and prospects in front of you, you may feel the urge to pick up the phone, send a note or visit each one to tell them more about your business. For most businesses, following that impulse would be a primitive and impractical form of direct marketing. The task of this section is to get you to refine this idea so that you can contact the people on your list to tell them about an event, action, product, or service that they will welcome hearing about.

Where appropriate, the most direct and effective marketing stimulus is to contact the persons on your list by telephone or in person to inform them of some new offering. If your information is genuinely useful, this approach is usually appreciated. An example is a fancy clothing boutique that calls the people on its list to tell them about a luncheon fashion show.

Many businesspeople are understandably uncomfortable phoning or otherwise directly contacting customers. They feel that if they offer a good service or product, people should appreciate them so much that they will seek them out. Often, too, there is the fear of being rejected. Many people resent getting sales calls at home. The reality, of course, is that any business is only a small item in the busy life of its customers and can easily be overlooked.

You can test this on a small scale for yourself; call ten of your customers and tell them about something that is of benefit to them.

Sampling as a Direct Marketing Technique

If you offer a quality product or service, one of the best marketing strategies consists of offering a potential customer a sample. We have all found samples of toothpaste, shampoo, and soap in our mailboxes. If the sample works to our satisfaction, we may well buy the product, even if this means switching brands.

This sort of large-scale sample distribution can often be a very effective marketing tool, but it is obviously way over the budget of the ordinary small businessperson. With a little imagination, however, you can come up with smaller-scale, targeted sampling ideas to let people on your action list know what you have to offer, and do it at a very reasonable cost. For example, we have a friend, Clark Herz, who offers free foot massages at the county fair. Tired tootsies are soon rejuvenated, and a whole new group of people are introduced to Clark's massage business.

Here are a few illustrations of how to creatively use sampling techniques at a modest cost:

- If you are in the landscaping business, offer to demonstrate how your new weed-whip can spiff up a yard in short order as part of clean-up duty at a local church or community center.
- The retail food business is a natural for samples; it's wise to have small bits of food regularly available for customers to nibble. To reach

large numbers of new customers, regularly contribute your special concoctions at community events. Bill's Farm Basket in Sebastopol, California, offers a wide assortment of fruits, veggies, and other goodies. This popular roadside market recently added a deli, and as customers wait at the checkout counter they are tempted with hummus and crackers, salsa and bread, or whatever new item the deli has decided to add to its selection. And you don't have to feel shy about seconds and thirds; Bill's encourages its customers to really enjoy their products. No wonder Bill's is a favorite roadside stand of Tom Peters, author of *The Management Expert*.

- A catering business can invite its customers to drop by for a food tasting. It might offer five variations on a dessert it is contemplating serving as part of its dinner menu and take a vote as to customer preference. Presumably, if the desserts are good, a number of the people who attend will call the caterer for future events and feel confident recommending it to friends.
- In Japan, department stores generally, and cosmetic sections always, include a small sample as a gift for customers with each purchase. All sorts of small businesses can use this technique to introduce customers to new products at relatively low cost. Indeed, if you can get the cooperation of your suppliers (who, after all, are interested in increasing sales of their products), you may even be able to provide your customers with small quantities of a new product at no cost to you.
- A tapestry weaver might send out a sample of a new "rough-knotty" yarn that he is incorporating in new designs.
- An educational game and curriculum designer could send a quiz based on one of her new products with the offer of a prize to anyone who answers it correctly.
- Welcome Wagon-type groups can be a good, relatively low-cost marketing tool to reach people new to your area. Offering a free

sample or introductory discount this way is appropriate if new residents are particularly likely to need your product or service.

- AOL does mass mailings of free, easy-to-use software and offers free access time to encourage potential customers to use its service.

Unfortunately, some businesspeople tend to dismiss sampling as a marketing tool because they don't think it's sufficiently sophisticated. Consider the story of Estee Lauder, founder of the largest family-owned cosmetics company in the world. When Lauder was starting her business in the 1930s, she stopped people on New York City streets and offered to make them up then and there. She usually ended up selling them a jar of her face cream (which, incidentally, was made in a converted stable by her Uncle John).

Picking the best sample from your business is often an act of creative inspiration. It requires matching the customers' interests with something you have to offer. Think about what aspect of your business you can share with others at a reasonable cost that is likely to entice people to want more. Converse Shoes, an athletic shoe manufacturer, for example, often provides "test" shoes in popular running areas. It offers a one-hour "sample," which is a great attention-getter and a real service. What better way to see if a pair of shoes is right for you than to actually run in them? If you like the Converse shoe, you get a discount coupon redeemable at local stores.

The Tackle Shack, a Hobie kayak dealer in Pinellas Park, Florida, rents boats for a day of paddling. This store is always busy as customers mull over the advantages of the different models. Choosing a kayak from a display is really difficult, so they encourage customers to take them out on the water with the rental price applied to the purchase. Salli visited the store several times before buying and each time was given a nice cold bottle of water. The summers are really hot in Florida, and the store encourages customers to take several bottles of water from its well-stocked refrigerator.

Giving Customers a Little Extra

Not so many years ago, when you purchased a dozen rolls or pastries at a bakery, you got one free. In some places, smart bakeries still give their customers a baker's dozen. Similarly, See's Candy, an old-line West Coast firm that sells wonderful candy at a fair price, always gives a purchaser a free piece of chocolate on the spot.

In both instances, the point is the same: A good customer gets a tangible thank you. Being generous is a wonderful way to say, "We appreciate your business. Please come back."

Another form of giving a little extra is looking upon your business as part of a community. Every business has a community, but in some businesses customers are encouraged to be part of that community and feel almost part of an extended family. For example, nowadays coffee houses abound. The reason why some of these establishments have an incredibly loyal clientele is that customers trust the business for all of the reasons we have discussed in this book, and they have decided to "adopt" it. Customers proudly invite their friends as if they were inviting them into their own kitchen and feel almost proprietary about the business.

A good example of business as extended family is Caffè Trieste, a flourishing business tucked away on a corner in North Beach, the old Italian neighborhood of San Francisco. One thing that sets it apart from other (often fancier) cafes in the neighborhood is its friendly, "family" atmosphere. On Saturday afternoons Caffè Trieste is jammed with customers who come to hear some of the regulars—friends and family of the owners—sing everything from Italian folk songs to Broadway hits. Audience participation is encouraged, and it's more like going to a party than to a restaurant.

Giving a little extra to good customers can build customer trust very quickly. Everyone likes a good deal, and many will pass on the good news to their friends. If you don't run a retail business, you may be saying, "Sure, but this sort of technique won't work for me." Nonsense. Let's look at a few examples:

- A lawyer who specializes in helping small businesses sends a letter to her network of clients and friends saying that, in September, she plans to concentrate on incorporations because her new computer program allows her to achieve substantial efficiencies by pre-programming the standard ("boilerplate") language. As part of "incorporation month," she not only offers a free (or low-cost), one-day seminar on the pros and cons of incorporating, but also reduces her normal incorporation fee by \$100 to pass along the savings a volume approach allows.
- A plumber gives every customer a bottle of liquid drain cleaner as part of house calls.
- A shoemaker includes a sample-size tin of shoe polish with every major repair job.
- A one-hour film developer sells film to customers at a wholesale rate.
- A tire service sends customers a simple tool designed to measure tread wear, along with an announcement of a sale on new tires.
- An accountant sends out an inexpensive financial record-keeping book to all his clients.

This list could be nearly endless. With a little creative thinking, every small businessperson can use discounts, small gifts, or extra services to make good customers feel appreciated. One good way many businesses do this is through the use of punch cards or tickets allowing customers to get one item free whenever they buy ten. We are very loyal to a video rental shop and a take-out pizza place that do this, and one of our editors brags about a children's shoe store that has the same policy, but with the nice little twist that they also keep the records of purchases for you.

And we know a nice little Japanese restaurant in San Francisco that gives customers a Japanese coin good for a free order of sake at the next visit.

Osmosis, the enzyme bath and massage business mentioned in Chapter 7, gives a birthday card that you present within 30 days of your birthday for you and your guests to receive 20% off all treatments.

Of course, punch cards and coupons work better in some businesses than others, and are clearly inappropriate in a fancy restaurant where people expect to pay well for exquisite food and service. However, even in the most expensive gourmet restaurant where diners don't worry about the number of zeros on the bill, a little extra is appreciated. For example, a friend reports having a dinner at Masa's, one of San Francisco's loveliest and most expensive restaurants. This party was hosted by another friend who was treating the entire group to celebrate his big promotion. The left side of the menu contained a number of wonderful entrees as part of a complete dinner. As mouth-watering as this list was, however, the "grass is always greener" phenomenon of human nature inevitably caused some of the party to begin fantasizing about how scrumptious some of the à la carte items on the other side of the menu were sure to be.

Finally, the host beckoned the waiter and asked if substitutions were allowed, fully expecting that the answer would be no, as it usually is. Much to everyone's surprise, the waiter said it was Masa's policy to offer its customers the best eating experience possible, and that almost anything on the menu could be substituted for anything else. From then on, our friend reports the meal was a terrific success, with one of everything ordered, bites shared, and everyone getting a taste of his or her favorites. When the last bite was eaten and sip of wine drunk and the bill paid, everyone felt that they had been treated wonderfully.



One of the most ingenious of all fair price techniques we have encountered comes from Tokyo Hands, a store in Tokyo that sells hobbies, crafts, art supplies, gardening tools, auto supplies, and office and bathroom goods, each on a separate floor. A customer who buys office supplies on the fifth floor is given a 20% discount coupon good for that day for any art supplies on the third floor. If he takes advantage of the offer, he is given another discount coupon good that day in a related department. In short, each department gives a discount coupon for another department that a person who patronized the first would likely be interested in.

Of course, one reason why this is such a brilliant marketing idea is that the customer is already in the store. Money spent to encourage customers to buy more when they are already on the premises is, of course, far more cost-effective than money spent to get them there in the first place.

Incidentally, use of this sort of discount coupon technique need not be limited to stores with many departments. Any group of retail businesses located in a relatively small area which appeal to similar types of customers can use it effectively. For example, a plant nursery might give its customers a 20% discount coupon good that day at a neighboring lawn furniture store, and vice versa. And the same principle, with perhaps a little extension of the time factor, can be used by service businesses, as would be the case if a tax accountant referred his clients to a reliable computerized bookkeeping service that offered them a slightly discounted hourly rate.

Product Demonstrations as a Direct Marketing Technique

Product demonstrations can make the difference between success and failure for many small businesses. For some, this marketing technique offers the only cost-effective way to make people aware of what they have to offer. Here are a few examples of successful demonstrations:

- An interior decorator, Tony Torrice, invited his list of builders, architects, and developers to a house where he had just installed a specially equipped bathroom for a handicapped client. No amount of words (whether in the form of an article or even a direct conversation) could have demonstrated the unique features of this room as well as seeing it firsthand.
- A contractor had a wine-tasting event at an office where he had designed a skylight in conjunction with mirrors to bring light to a particularly dark area of the room. Actually experiencing the space allowed many of the people present to see how this kind of skylight could improve their living and working spaces.
- A rug manufacturer invited his customers to observe one of his master weavers at work on a huge loom so people could gain an insight into the rug-making process. He also displayed his finished rugs.
- The late Kaisek Wong, a women's clothing designer, had two models wearing his stunning clothes accompany him to nearly every party, dinner, and opening to which he was invited. Most people loved to invite him, especially the circle of women who bought his clothing.
- A foreign language school sent its alumni, donor, and prospect list a one-page flyer of common phrases for a dozen different languages and offered a free 15-minute telephone lesson to accompany it.

Classes as a Direct Marketing Technique

It's often hard to remember that many products and services that are commonplace for us are complete novelties to others. The media lets us know a little about many new developments but rarely teaches us enough to make us willing to break old patterns and make new products part of our lives. For example, TV may tell you about the latest digital camcorder, but it won't teach you how to operate all the settings on one. Most people learn through classes offered free when they purchase their

cameras. Stores that don't provide these instruction classes are missing an obvious marketing technique.

Because business benefits from selling all sorts of new product developments, our society leaves much of the job of educating consumers up to these businesses. Businesses that do a good job at education sell more. Here are some examples of how businesses can use classes to enhance their marketing efforts:

- A weight-lifting gym offers introductory instruction to its customers.
- A women's clothing store offers color analysis and wardrobe design classes for its clientele.
- An outdoor equipment store offers to teach people how to use the equipment it sells.
- A word processing firm teaches its techniques for high-speed mailing list input and for doing statistical tables.
- A school for children with learning disabilities teaches parents and grandparents of students about recent developments in this rapidly changing field.
- A locksmith teaches businesspersons the elements that go into creating a tight security system.
- Fireplace manufacturers have a special opportunity to teach classes to architects and decorators on the mathematical calculations necessary to design a fireplace that works.

In addition, classes are a particularly effective marketing technique for service providers such as lawyers, accountants, doctors, designers, and all sorts of consultants to keep their clients up to date on new developments in their fields.

Should you charge for these classes? It's a tough question. Banks often offer free classes for their target clients, such as medium-sized businesses. One of our favorite local banks hosts a free breakfast meeting twice a year for their business customers and invites a knowledgeable speaker

to talk to the group for an hour. Free also seems to be the rule when it comes to classes and lectures taught by large accounting firms and pharmaceutical companies, where product prices are comparable from company to company, and mark-ups are high. In many small business situations, however, modest fees—often below the cost of providing the class—are prevalent and accepted.

We have found that the key to classes is not how much you charge, but how much real value they provide your customers. For example, if you run a woodworking or interior decorating business and offer classes (free or not) that are little more than a sales pitch, the classes will not be well received and may even generate negative comments about your business. A far better approach is to charge a modest fee for classes that provide excellent information and training and hardly mention the services or products your business provides. If your classes are good, people will demand to know more about your business. When they do, offer them a small discount and you will have created a very satisfied customer.

Making Its Own Kind of Music

Quinnipiac is a private school in Hamden, Connecticut. Due in large part to an ingenious poll it undertakes each year, this small university has tripled its enrollment and quintupled its budget in ten years, keeping its name in the public mind by providing a service.

Frequently cited by public officials, researchers, and journalists, Quinnipiac conducts surveys on state and national elections, political races, and other hot issues including taxes, municipal services, and the environment. Results are regularly featured in *The New York Times*, *The Wall Street Journal*, and *The Washington Post*.

This technique is followed by Bernard Kamoroff, author of the best-selling small business guidebook *Small Time Operator* (Bell Springs, 2006). Bernard (Bear to his friends) schedules classes and workshops for

small businesspersons, sometimes under his own auspices and sometimes through existing educational programs such as local college extension programs. As part of the course, he distributes his book to the students so that they can refer to various charts and other information as he goes along. He asks only that the books be handled carefully and returned at the end of the lecture.

Because our friend Bear's class is so good, one or more students always inquire if they can purchase the book. When the class learns not only that they can buy the book, but that they get a 10% discount if they do, as many as 75% purchase it, and most ask to have their copies autographed.

Follow-Up as a Direct Marketing Technique

One of the gut responses of a businessperson with good marketing skills is to follow up with important customers to find out how things worked out. The simplest way to do this is to call and ask customers if they are happy with the product or service they received. Some people new to business are reluctant to ask, either because they are afraid of the answer or feel shy. But if you don't ask you will never know—and, as we discussed earlier, an unhappy customer probably won't tell you but will tell his or her friends. Usually a customer with a small complaint will be delighted for the opportunity to tell you and will remain a loyal customer.

You should follow up if at all possible, especially following a marketing event. The questions you want answered are:

- Did your customer like your goods or services?
- Did it meet her expectations?
- Is there anything you can do now to increase your customer's satisfaction?

Designing Direct Marketing Events

SAMPLES: (items or reference guides your customers would find useful)

DEMONSTRATIONS:

CLASSES: (reexamine your business definition in Chapter 7 to broaden the range of topics your customers and prospects are interested in)

FOLLOW-UPS: (what related product or service delivered by mail, phone, email, questionnaire, or visit could make your past and present customers more satisfied with your work?)

There are many ways to follow up in addition to or instead of calling. We suggest a few here, but you will, of course, want to use your own creativity to find an approach that is appropriate for your business:

- A friend who manufactures handmade chairs sends a letter to customers inquiring about their satisfaction with his product. He also recommends a special, hard-to-get finishing oil he uses and offers to sell it to the customers at a substantial discount.
- A knife manufacturer offers a free sharpening training session to clients.
- An illumination consultant comes by a few weeks after a lighting job is completed to see if any slight adjustments might be helpful.
- A humane society worker calls a week after a pet is adopted to see if there are any unexpected problems.
- A computer-based information retrieval service calls a day after a requested research report is sent to the client to see if additional material needs to be generated.

This is your chance to be your own business consultant and design your own direct marketing plan. These worksheets are very important. Use every creative technique you know of to write down your ideas. Eat chocolate if that will help, stand on your head if that works for you, have a brainstorming session with your associates, go running, take a vacation but—whatever it takes—do it!

Parallel Marketing Actions

In addition to direct marketing, your marketing action plan should include parallel marketing techniques. Parallel marketing is aimed at promoting your business area in general, not just your business. Think of products and services closely related to yours or which are in some way complementary, that you wholeheartedly recommend. By telling your customers about these products or services, you provide a valuable

service at the same time you give them a better perspective about your business. It is a strong form of teaching: subtle, clear, and participatory. By helping your customers, you make it far more likely that they will make positive personal recommendations about your business.

Moon Travel Handbooks in Chico, California, sells state-by-state travel guides for popular tourist and camping destinations. Its marketing is largely parallel in the form of a quarterly newsletter with articles written by travel experts and a website (www.moon.com). One issue contained articles on wineries in Texas, fashions in Montana, and how to avoid or treat questionable drinking water by a Ph.D. in international health. On the website are great links to travel resources and some of the best online information that we have seen about staying healthy in other countries.

A different approach to parallel marketing is provided by the Stanford University Business School, which occasionally makes available guest lecturers for alumni in major cities around the country. This is, of course, a very traditional marketing approach. Stanford is marketing itself to its alumni, to whom it will surely appeal for contributions at one time or another. But it's important to understand that there is no direct pitch at the lectures, which provide alumni with a service at the same time that Stanford's value as an educational institution is underlined.

It is helpful, in developing your list of parallel marketing actions, to make distinctions between sampling, demonstrations, and classes, if only to stimulate your imagination to generate more ideas.

Samples and Offers as Parallel Marketing

Here are some examples of parallel marketing techniques using samples and special offers:

- A Texas dentist sends out toothbrushes for patients to use without water or toothpaste while driving.
- A lawyer with a new practice sends his small business clients a copy of a booklet explaining partnership laws.

- The partners in an events organizing company alert all their clients and prospects to a wine tasting at a local vineyard.
- A Spanish restaurant has regular drawings among customer entries for tickets to local flamenco dance performances.
- A stable that boards and rents horses sends out flyers to the people on its mailing list describing a nontoxic fly control system offered by a local company.
- A small publisher producing books for craftspeople includes materials in its mailings describing useful books and resources published by other companies.
- A florist gives a customer who buys cut flowers a sample package of a substance that extends the life of the flowers.

Each of these parallel marketing efforts provides useful information for customers that adds to their general expertise in the field. The dentist who sends out toothbrushes is clearly broadening the knowledge of his patients. They learn that using a dry toothbrush is good for the gums and can be done while driving to work, a significant departure from the “brush after every meal” advice which they probably disregard as too inconvenient.

The partnership booklet gives the lawyer’s customers, in a convenient form, a better perspective on the legal issues involved in their business organization. This booklet is also a way to alert them to many issues (for example, what happens to the partnership if one partner becomes disabled) that they might never have recognized as concerns for which they might want to consult a lawyer.

Similarly, by inviting people to a wine tasting, the event’s organizers are able to contact potential customers in a way that is far more effective than the standard approach of sending them a fancy brochure in the mail.

The publisher is being particularly creative by recommending books published by someone else in a related field. By doing this, the publisher is saying, “I am willing to take your interests seriously.”

Demonstrations as Parallel Marketing

Demonstrations are among the more interesting parallel marketing events a business can offer. The color and flair they add to a business is often beneficial in and of itself. People, including your employees, like businesses with vitality. And, of course, customers respond positively to demonstrations that provide them real value.

Depending on your particular business, it’s usually worth exploring a wide range of demonstration techniques. But always remember the two key rules to a successful demonstration:

- make your demonstrations fun, and
- give real value.

Here are some examples of demonstrations that work as parallel marketing techniques:

- A white water river rafting company holds a demonstration of ocean kayaking at a local beach.
- A wind generator manufacturer sponsors a one-day show displaying the most recent battery storage systems.
- A sports club invites someone who restrings racquets to demonstrate his technique in the lobby.
- A hair salon in Copenhagen offers its customers smocks to wear during their visit that are hand-designed by a neighboring clothing designer.
- A community foundation in Portland, Oregon, puts on a fair to which it invites all the local accountants, lawyers, and management consultants who offer special services to nonprofit organizations.

In some businesses, a demonstration is much the same as a sample or a class. The ocean kayaking business is an example. It normally takes a beginner about three hours of instruction to feel confident paddling alone. When Sea Trek of Sausalito, California, was a relatively new business in a new field, to entice potential customers into giving kayaking a try, it offered one-and-a-half-hour “samplers” at a nominal fee. This demo time was credited toward the minimum three hours of instruction required before customers could rent a kayak. After the first hour, most people were eager to sign up for the remaining two hours of low-cost introductory class. Many people who completed the course became enthusiasts who rented or bought kayaks from Sea Trek. In addition, Sea Trek also invited people in the media to try out kayaking. If they liked their experience (which they all did), they would of course write an enthusiastic article or give Sea Trek television coverage. Sea Trek did an excellent job of offering demonstrations as well as educating customers. It no longer offers demonstrations, as the business has become extremely popular. Sea Trek helped educate customers to the point where kayaking is now on the cover of major magazines and is often recommended as a way to relieve stress.

The concept underlying parallel marketing is especially clear in the case of classes. The benefits to the business owner are twofold: First, classes increase the level of expertise of valued customers, who in turn are better able to make, and more confident in making, personal referrals to their friends. Second, they help customers better appreciate the subtleties and nuances that make your business unique.

Here are some examples of classes as a parallel marketing technique:

- A consulting firm in the field of policy analysis sponsors a class in a specialized area of agriculture where policy analysis had been effectively used.
- A sailboat sales company sends its customers free coupons for a course in boat racing.
- A grocery store invites a produce grower to give brief talks explaining how best to determine when certain types of fruit are ripe.
- A prepaid health plan offers regular classes by outsiders to patients on dozens on health issues from “Pediatric Emergencies” to “Oh, My Aching Back.”

Follow-Up as Parallel Marketing

Follow-up as a parallel marketing method takes a little extra thought. In direct marketing follow-up, you check on how the customer has reacted to your product or service; in parallel marketing, you keep him up to date on an issue that is related to your business. This allows you to demonstrate your genuine concern about your customers’ needs. Parallel follow-up marketing can be as personal as a dry cleaner asking a customer who had an elegant opera costume cleaned how his opera performance went.

By this point, you are probably convinced that a well-planned and thought-out parallel marketing action or event can help you establish extra credibility in your field. When you play the role of an expert broker of related activities, your customers and potential customers see you as creative, competent, and caring.

When you fill out the worksheet below, try to think of at least five parallel marketing events and actions for each category.

Designing Parallel Marketing Events

SAMPLES: (items or reference guides your customers would find useful)

DEMONSTRATIONS:

CLASSES: (reexamine your business definition in Chapter 7 to broaden
the range of topics your customers and prospects are interested in)

FOLLOW-UPS: (what related product or service delivered by mail, phone, email,
questionnaire, or visit could make your past and present customers
more satisfied with your work?)

Peer-Based Marketing Actions

One of the most important things proprietors of small businesses can do is get together, informally and regularly, with peers. It not only provides a great source of both moral support and tangible assistance, but is also a superior way to explain your business to people who can refer customers to you. Paul Terry, a small business consultant in San Francisco, has a number of peers whom he takes to breakfast or lunch on a regular basis to stay in touch and to make sure that they know what direction his business is taking. Paul understands that these business friends are an important part of his referral base.

If you are a graphic designer, for example, with a new business, you need to meet others working in your field, especially those with established businesses, to tell them who you are and where you work. If they get overloaded, you want them to know exactly how to refer people to you. In the real estate business, it is common practice to visit multiple listing homes with other real estate agents. This caravanning is usually done once a week and enables agents in an area to keep in contact.

The essence of peer-based marketing is for you to understand your role as part of a group of peers in your field and to make effective use of it. All of us have unique contributions to make. Just as one doctor, say an internist, can make use of a surgeon when the case calls for surgery, so you can help and get help from others in your field.

It is often surprising to find that friends and peers we know well through business and consider just ordinary folks are admired or even held in awe by others. Think about peers whom you know well who qualify as special in your community. Don't be afraid to define the concept of community creatively. For example, if you run a motorcycle shop and are friendly with several dirt bike racing champs, these people should top your list. They may not be well-known at the local Presbyterian church, but they are important in the community that you care about.

The key to peer-based marketing is having these well-known people participate constructively in your business. If you can do this, you will

reinforce all of the elements of trust we have discussed in this book and, as a result, stimulate personal recommendations. Often your friends will be happy to help you, whether or not there is some possibility that they will benefit as a result of their participation. However, on occasion, it is appropriate to pay an honorarium or otherwise compensate friends if their participation will involve considerable time or trouble, or if that is how they make their living. Always remember that while you may wish to use your friendship network to help your customers, you don't want to make unfair demands on others.

Inviting your respected friends to receptions, coffee events, demonstrations, brief classes, book signings, and other events can be the grounds for a whole array of marketing events which need only be tangential to the business. For example, we know of events where:

- The author of a well-known personal finance book attended a “Getting Thin” class reception.
- Several football stars attended a church bazaar to raise funds for the church's athletic programs.
- A business consultant for graphic designers invited a famous architect to an after-dinner reception for her clients.
- A lawyer who specializes in immigration law invited clients and friends to an office reception for the governor-general of Hong Kong.
- A massage table manufacturer hosted a late afternoon reception for the factory employees, suppliers, and retailers in the area, with a well-known sports doctor as the guest.
- A scuba diving store and school invited a marine biologist friend to brief its class at dive sites.
- A commercial insurance broker with a good consumer advocacy reputation had a reception for his friends and clients to meet Ralph Nader before a talk Nader gave.
- A Japanese advertising firm invited many of its client representatives to meet and hear a brief private talk by an American marketing expert on the subject of Silicon Valley electronics firms.

Profile: Fritz Maytag

It was a perfect, beautiful day in July, and we had taken a walk around the neighborhood to settle our lunch. We returned to the office full of energy. There working at the computer with our friend Wayne was an honest-to-God hero: Fritz Maytag.

Fritz is a successful entrepreneur who heads the York Creek Vineyards, which produces some of the world's finest grapes, as well as the family cheese company and the renowned Anchor Steam Brewery.

In 1969, when Fritz bought the brewery, it was near bankruptcy. He improved the product rapidly, using only the best ingredients. He created nostalgic old-fashioned bottle labels and beautiful hand-painted delivery trucks. The company, considered one of the finest beer-makers in America by gourmets and drinkers alike, does not advertise. Instead of costly ads, Maytag uses ten master distributors.

In the June 30, 1985, issue of the *San Francisco Examiner* is Jim Wood's fascinating interview with Fritz Maytag. We have excerpted, with the newspaper's kind permission, Maytag's philosophy and strategies regarding marketing.

"Like so many liberal art students, young people interested in philosophy and ideas and religion and all that stuff, I had thought that business was dumb and ugly and dishonest and just a lot of money-grubbing people running around fooling each other and talking people into buying their dumb products. That may be one reason I've never advertised very much. I always felt that if they came and bought it on its own right that I would feel better.

"I just sort of had a natural instinct for a way to market the beer, which was first to make a wonderful beer that we were sure was just superb and well made, with a true story. I used to say I wanted a beer that would please people here (pointing) on the taste buds, but also up here in the head, you know. I felt instinctively that the way to market it was slowly and gently, and let it trickle around to get some word of mouth going, tell our story to as many people as we possibly could, show them the brewery. Not to advertise... I felt that we would stand out by not doing that....

Profile: Fritz Maytag (cont'd)

“What we did was we opened the brewery night and day to anyone who would come and look. We had art exhibits. We had sculpture exhibits, where we turned the whole brewery over to a remarkable man, Ron Boise, who was notorious, well, infamous, for having done a little thing called a “Kama Sutra” series in copper. (Lawrence) Ferlinghetti exhibited it, and the police came down.

“Anyway, we weren’t dumb. We turned the whole brewery over to him and we put this huge sculpture of a naked man and woman up on the roof where you could see it from the freeway. We made the front page of the *Chronicle* and the *Examiner*. The district attorney, or whoever it was, called up and said “Hello, is this the Anchor Brewery?” “Yes,” I said. They said, “We want to know about that sculpture on the roof.” I said, “What do you want to know about it?” “We want to know whether it is obscene or not.” I said “No, it’s not obscene.” He said, “Oh. Thank you.” And he hung up.

“We had a balloon ascension on Fisherman’s Wharf and we made the paper again. The point being—Anchor Steam Beer was here. We were local, we were continuing, and we did our packaging, labels and things, trucks, all those things, we did with as much care and sort of flair for expressing our attitude toward the beer as we possibly could. We purposely [made] them sort of naive and sincere. We put a long story on the neck label. I always said, even if people don’t read it, they’ll get the message there is a long story here and someday they will read it.” (For more on the company, go to www.anchorbrewing.com.)

Before you begin to design your marketing plan, we would like to tell you about Book Passage in Corte Madera, California, which is one of our favorite independent booksellers. At a time when many independents are going out of business, it appears to be thriving. Here is a sampling of some of its superb marketing, which demonstrates how one business incorporates direct, peer-based, and parallel into its marketing mix. Book Passage offers excellent news and reviews in both hard copy and on its Web page (www.bookpassage.com). It has over 50 knowledgeable booksellers to help you, along with a “passion and exuberance for books and writers.”

This commitment to writers and readers shows in the 200 or so author events the bookstore hosts every year in addition to its classes, book groups, and conferences. Each Christmas, Book Passage sponsors the Giving Tree, which provides children from infancy to 18 years old with beautifully gift-wrapped books delivered by the store.



51 Tamal Vista Blvd., Corte Madera, CA 94925 • www.bookpassage.com • 2008, No. 1

415-927-0960 (Marin) • 415-835-1020 (San Francisco) • 800-999-7909 (orders)

One Book/One Marin

A Celebration of Amy Tan's "Saving Fish From Drowning"
Community-Wide Launch Party at Book Passage • Wed., Jan. 23, 7:00 pm

Amy Tan and her novel *Saving Fish From Drowning* are the focus of the 2008 One Book One Marin celebration.

Book Passage is partnering with the Public Libraries of Marin County, Dominican University, the Marin History Museum,

Marin Education Fund, and others to kick-off this county-wide event at 7:00 pm on Wed., Jan. 23, 2008 at Book Passage. That evening there will be refreshments, informal discussions with committee members, a presentation of the award by KQED's *Michael Krasny*, and a talk by *Amy Tan*.

This is the second year of **One Book One Marin** (last year was *Isabel Allende's Daughter of Fortune*). Like programs in other communities, the results of Marin's program have been gratifying. By suggesting that everyone in the community read and discuss one book, libraries are promoting reading, community dialogue, and an awareness of important issues.

The Marin County librarians have been the driving force behind Marin's One Book program. Their committee has put together a list of events spanning a five-month period culminating in a major event at Dominican University's Angelico Hall on May 6. In between these two events are a variety of events and activities focused around *Amy Tan's* wonderful novel (see www.onebookonemarin.org for details).

For more about *Amy Tan* and *Saving Fish From Drowning*, see page 3.



Amy Tan
Jan. 23, 7:00 pm

\$10 billion Short?

There's Half-a-Billion Out There, if You Want It

As we go to press, the Governor has announced that California's budget is at least \$10 billion short. It seems to us that this would be a good time to collect all the back sales taxes that Amazon.com owes the state. *For more, see pg. 16*

January-February 2008

Marin Author Events	p. 2
San Francisco Events	p. 12
Elaine's Picks	p. 14
Sales Tax Gimmickry	p. 16
Writing in Italy	p. 18
Travel Writers & Photographers Conference	p. 19
Mystery Writers Conference	p. 20
Children's Writers & Illustrators Conference	p. 21
Marin Classes	p. 22
B.P. Marketplace	p. 27, 29
Book Clubs	p. 30
Cooks with Books	back



Laurie King
Jan. 8, 7:00 pm



Sue Miller
Jan. 9, 12:30 pm



Pauline Frommer
Jan. 11, 7:00 pm



Michael Pollan
Jan. 15, 7:00 pm



Muhammad Yunus
Jan. 17, 7:00 pm



Madeleine Albright
Jan. 24, 7:00 pm
at Dominican



Willie Brown
Feb. 5, 7:00 pm
Ferry Building



John Lescroart
Feb. 28, 7:00 pm

Creating Community for Your Business

Most people consider a business that they appreciate and respect as part of their community. You are part of their community; they are part of yours. Together you can help make the community vital.

Nolo's business is built on providing trustworthy legal information, and a major aspect of the business involves building a community. Nolo carefully develops relationships with other online businesses. For example, they license their content to CareThere.com, a company Nolo respects and whose website exudes integrity and community spirit.

Several Internet sites have been pioneers in creating communities of travelers. Lonely Planet Books, a series of guidebooks for low-budget travelers, was quick to establish a website to keep all of its lodging, dining, and transportation reviews up to date with feedback from recent visitors. Away.com, which focuses on adventure travel, features online contributions of photographs and commentary by recent travelers to exotic travel destinations.

Sassafras restaurant in Santa Rosa, California, builds community in a variety of ways including online methods. Owner Michael Hirschberg teaches a class at the local junior college on food and wine pairing, hosts a special scholarship dinner called "Class in a Glass," offers a wine seminar series, and manages many other special events all featuring Sonoma County products. As Michael describes it, "We are in the hospitality business and we want people to feel comfortable, accepted, and part of the family. We have a mailing list of over 6,000 people, and we send them a newsletter of upcoming events, which helps them feel connected to the restaurant."

Creating Community for Your Business (cont'd)

Amazon is another business that does a superb job of servicing their customers. Amazon has collected information longer and used it more actively than any other online retailer. In 2006 they launched a Web search engine that remembers everything you've ever searched for. Amazon received a patent on technology that can track information about the aunt you sent a cookbook to last year and your grandson's Game Boy purchased for him at Christmas. Customers can choose the one-click option to purchase an item and there is no need to remember your credit card info or give them your address. They remember. They inform you when your book will ship and when to expect it.

Amazon makes recommendations based on books you own, books you have previously searched for, and any books you have rated. Amazon also offers an area entitled "About You" where you can tell the public about yourself and attach a photo. You can keep a wish list, and if you can't think of anything to wish for, they can, offering possibilities from books previously browsed. There is even a "Special Occasion Reminders" where customers can enter the names of their family and friends, the type of occasion, and the date.



Creating a Calendar of Events

Marketing Calendar for an Interior Design Firm	327
Marketing Calendar for Jerry and Jess's New Chiropractic Clinic	329
Marketing Calendar for Lolly & Criggles—an eBay Children's Boutique Clothing Website	336

We have seen many good marketing plans written—but very few executed. Hardworking, sincere businesspeople need to be assured that the extra boost of energy needed to implement a marketing action plan based on the techniques discussed in this book is well worth the effort, even though:

- each action and event takes time to plan and get going, and
- good people with wonderful businesses often forget them when business gets busy.

Because we tend to really focus on marketing only when business slows down, it often takes a long time to get a good marketing plan activated, which doesn't do a lagging business much good. We can't emphasize this point often enough: The best time to market is when you don't need the business. If you don't heed this advice and wait until business is slow, it might be too late.

The way around this all-too-human dilemma is obviously to plan ahead and spend time and effort doing creative marketing on a regularly scheduled basis. One way to do this is to schedule events on a year's calendar, allowing ample time between events so they remain fun instead of a burden. Keep in mind your busiest seasons and schedule major events well in advance of these times.

First, fill out a worksheet, like the samples on the following pages, for each event you are planning. Then make a note of all the important deadlines on a large 12-month calendar, with big blocks to write in important details. An oversize calendar that you can hang on the wall is a great way to remind yourself to keep at your marketing efforts.

Help People Feel Comfortable

At all of the events you schedule where members of your business community have the opportunity to meet each other, it is important that you help them get together. Introduce people to each other, have designated hosts to help people mingle, use name tags if appropriate, and do everything else you know to create a convivial atmosphere.

The following detailed examples may help you envision a marketing plan that will work for your business.

Marketing Calendar for an Interior Design Firm

1. March: Open House at Greenfield home. Put photos on website. (Direct Marketing)
2. June: Evening class on patio lighting. Post podcast of class on website. (Parallel Marketing)
3. October: Demonstration at office furniture store of efficient desk lamp. Post 30-second video on website. (Parallel Marketing)
4. December: Reception for chief graphic designer. Post photos of reception on website. (Peer-Based Marketing)
5. May of next year: Mailing about Underwriters Lab approval of outdoor lamp design. (Parallel Marketing)

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #4: Afternoon reception for Bernard Landers, chief graphic designer
for a well-known design magazine.

Date Dec. 16

Objective To introduce the clients and friends on my mailing list to a college friend who
has interesting ideas about design.

STEPS

DEADLINE

1. Set up exact date, time, and location for reception.	Aug. 31
2. Prepare draft of invitation and description of Bernard's recent work for review by Bernard.	
Send to him and get response.	Sept. 30
3. Arrange final details on event location, order catering from Nancy with approximate number and price per person.	Oct. 30
4. Print invitation, envelopes, and RSVP card.	Nov. 14
5. Confirm all details with Bernard. Send out mailing.	Dec. 1
6. Estimate final number of guests for catering. Invite by phone four special guests to dinner afterward.	
Make dinner reservations.	Dec. 10
7. Event. Bring name cards.	Dec. 16
8. Bring cameras to take photos.	Dec. 16
9. Follow up by calling or emailing people on list to see if they enjoyed.	Dec. 18
10. Post photos on website (mark calendar to remove photos in one month).	Dec. 20

Marketing Calendar for Jerry and Jess's New Chiropractic Clinic

1. January: Open House for neighborhood. (Direct Marketing)
2. January: Open House for businesses within ¼-mile radius. (Direct Marketing)
3. February: Reception at boathouse for friends of the clinic. (Direct Marketing)
4. March: Jerry give talk at Rotary Club. (Parallel Marketing)
5. April: Jerry give talk at SR Community College. (Parallel Marketing)
6. April: Jess on panel with sports experts at Women's Service Club. (Parallel Marketing)
7. May: Evening demonstration at clinic for automobile back supports. (Parallel Marketing)
8. July: Evening demonstration at clinic on posture and watching TV. (Parallel Marketing) Commission brief video for website.
9. August: Participate in SR sports fair. (Parallel Marketing)
10. September: Evening demonstration and panel discussion on posture and computers. Two guest lecturers. (Peer-Based Marketing)
11. October: Jerry and Jess speak about small business marketing to Chamber of Commerce. (Parallel Marketing)
12. November: Evening demonstration and panel discussion on posture and cooking. Guest lecturer. (Peer-Based Marketing)

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #1: Open House for neighborhood

Date Saturday January 20

Objective To let all the neighbors within 1/4 mile know where the new
chiropractic clinic is located and that we are good neighbors.

STEPS

1. Design fliers and find promotional item to attach.

2. Print fliers, have banners painted.

3. Hire three students to deliver fliers to every home
and attach promotional item.

4. Order 2 extra video players for display in side
rooms. Order flowers and catering. Arrange for kid care.

5. Get help cleaning office and putting up signs for event.

DEADLINE

Nov. 30

Dec. 20

Jan. 6

Jan. 7

Jan. 20

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #2: Open House for businesses.

Date Saturday January 27

Objective To meet the business people in the neighborhood (within 1/4-mile radius) who can make
referrals. Actual event is secondary—an excuse to meet neighboring business people.

STEPS

1. Design fliers and walk neighborhood to identify key businesses
to visit.

2. Print fliers.

3. Schedule ten two-hour segments of time for Jerry and Jess to
distribute flier/invitation and talk to neighboring businesses.

4. Order flowers and catering.

5. Get help cleaning office and putting up signs for event.

DEADLINE

Nov. 30

Dec. 20

Jan. 6

Jan. 7

Jan. 27

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #4: Jerry give talk to Rotary Club

Date Sometime in March

Objective To establish Jerry as a knowledgeable health practitioner.

STEPS

DEADLINE

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. Phone chair of speaker's committee of Rotary to | |
| arrange luncheon talk. | <u>Jan. 30</u> |
| 2. Prepare and send out press release to local press about Rotary talk. | <u>Feb. 28</u> |
| 3. Prepare display materials for talk and hand-out | |
| flier for audience. | <u>Mar. 4</u> |
| 4. Phone friends who are members of Rotary to | <u>March, 2 weeks</u> |
| invite them to luncheon talk. | <u>before talk</u> |
| 5. Event. Have materials to demonstrate and fliers to hand out. | |
| 6. Record talk for possible podcast. | |

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #5: Jerry give talk to SR Community College

Date April Open

Objective To establish Jerry as a knowledgeable health practitioner.

STEPS

DEADLINE

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| 1. Phone provost for name of the organizer of guest | |
| lectures to arrange talk. | <u>Jan. 30</u> |
| 2. Prepare and send out press release to local press | |
| about Community College talk. | <u>Mar. 20</u> |
| 3. Prepare display materials for talk and hand-out | |
| flier for audience. | <u>Mar. 21</u> |
| 4. Event. Have materials to demonstrate and fliers to hand out. | |
| 5. Record talk for possible podcast. | |

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #6: Jess on panel with sports experts at Women's Service Club.
 Date April
 Objective To establish Jess as a knowledgeable health practitioner with community ties.

STEPS

1. Phone chair of speaker's committee of Women's Service Club to arrange luncheon talk. Offer to get other panel members.
2. Find other panel members and notify Club speaker's chair.
3. Prepare display materials for talk and hand-out flier for audience.
4. Phone friends who are members of the Club to invite them to talk.
5. Event. Have materials to demonstrate and fliers to hand out.

DEADLINE

Jan. 30
Feb. 15
Mar. 24
April, one week before talk

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #7: Demonstration at the clinic of automobile back supports.
 Date May 25
 Objective To make potential clients conscious of spine-related issues and to associate spine problems with the clinic.

STEPS

1. Schedule time for demonstration.
2. Complete final draft of flier with graphics.
3. Print and mail flier.
4. Design and print flier and reading list on subject matter.
 Order samples for display.
5. Clean and organize clinic.
6. Event. Have name cards. Have fliers to hand out.

DEADLINE

Feb. 28
Mar. 30
May. 10

May 14
May 24

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #8: Evening demonstration at clinic on posture and watching TV; suggest
relevance of issue to parents of growing children.

Date July 14

Objective To make potential clients conscious of spine-related issues and to
associate spine problems in their minds with the clinic.

STEPS

1. Schedule time for demonstration.
2. Complete final draft of flier with graphics.
3. Print and mail flier.
4. Design and print flier and reading list on subject matter.
Order samples for display.
5. Clean and organize clinic.
6. Event. Have name cards. Have fliers to hand out.

DEADLINE

Mar. 30

Apr. 15

June 30

July 1

July 1

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #9: Participate in SR annual sports fair.

Date August 8 and 9

Objective To associate Jerry, Jess, and the clinic with sports and health in
the community.

STEPS

1. Call fair organizer to make arrangements for talk and booth.
2. Complete design of booth and sports fliers.
3. Print fliers, paint banners and booth display.
4. Prepare gallons of lemonade to give out at sports fair.
5. Event. Make sure booth has either Jerry or Jess at
all times both days.

DEADLINE

Jan. 30

May 30

July 15

Aug. 8

Aug. 8-9

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #10: Evening demonstration and panel discussion on posture and computers.
With two guest lecturers in computer field.

Date Sept. 4

Objective To let clients and prospective clients know that Jerry and Jess are
current and up to date about health issues.

STEPS

DEADLINE

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| 1. Schedule time for demonstration. Invite two friends to
be on panel. | <u>Jul. 20</u> |
| 2. Complete final draft of flier with graphics. | <u>Aug. 15</u> |
| 3. Print and mail flier. | <u>Aug. 22</u> |
| 4. Design and print flier and reading list on subject matter.
Organize details of display. Confirm with other panelists. | <u>Aug. 28</u> |
| 5. Clean clinic. | <u>Sept. 3</u> |
| 6. Event. Have name cards. Have fliers to hand out. | <u></u> |

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #11: Jerry and Jess speak about small business marketing to the Chamber
of Commerce.

Date October

Objective To establish Jerry and Jess as knowledgeable health practitioners.

STEPS

DEADLINE

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Phone chair of speaker's committee of Chamber of
Commerce to arrange luncheon talk. | <u>Mar. 30</u> |
| 2. Prepare display materials for talk and hand-out fliers
for audience. | <u>Sept. 25</u> |
| 3. Phone friends who are members of the Chamber of
Commerce to invite them to the luncheon talk. | <u>Oct. one week
before talk</u> |
| 4. Event. Have sample materials to demonstrate and fliers to hand out. | <u></u> |

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event #12: Evening demonstration and panel discussion on posture and cooking.
Guest lecturer, Ramon Giardia, well-known local chef.

Date Nov. 12

Objective To establish Jerry and Jess as knowledgeable health practitioners with
special knowledge about spine problems.

STEPS

DEADLINE

1. Schedule time for demonstration. Confirm with Ramon.	<u>Sept. 30</u>
2. Complete final draft of flier with graphics.	<u>Oct. 30</u>
3. Print and mail flier.	<u>Nov. 2</u>
4. Design and print handout and reading list on subject matter.	
Confirm with Ramon and find out what samples he needs	
for display.	<u>Nov. 10</u>
5. Clean and organize clinic.	<u>Nov. 11</u>
6. Event. Have name cards. Have fliers to hand out.	

Marketing Calendar for Lolly & Criggles—an eBay Children's Boutique Clothing Website

Monthly:

Baby photo contest. Enter by sending a photo of your baby in a Lolly & Criggle's outfit. Winners' photos will be posted on website and will be given a 20%-off coupon for any one outfit. (Parallel Marketing)

1. January: Send email communication to Lolly & Criggle's Club members re: after-holiday price reductions. Only full online email sale notice for seasonal sale. High-quality graphic action on website. (Direct Marketing)

State Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from Florida this month. (Direct Marketing)

2. February: Three-day inventory sale in neighborhood storefront (Lyons, Colorado). Notify previous buyers within 100-mile radius; place advertisements in local newspapers; contact Mom's clubs, preschools, medical providers, and other child-related stores and service providers; display posters within 5-mile radius. (Direct Marketing)

Manufacturer's Line Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases of Chicken Noodle this month. (Parallel Marketing)

3. March: Prepare direct mail piece for May sale mailing to mothers listed in county new birth records for previous four years. Send email communication to Lolly & Criggle's Club members announcing May sale. (Direct Marketing)

Partnership sales event at a local play gym featuring Lolly & Criggle's clothing, play gym opportunities, and photos by a professional children's photographer. Offer discounts on clothing, discounts on enrollment at play gym, and free photo sessions with professional photographer. (Direct, Parallel, and Peer Marketing)

Country Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from the United Kingdom this month. (Direct Marketing)

4. April: Press Release to *Daily Camera*, (Boulder newspaper) and *Denver Post* about eBay business success that has a local inventory sale (May sale) to benefit the local Children's Hospital. Photo opportunity. (Parallel and Direct Marketing)

State Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from Colorado this month.

5. May: Inventory sale in neighborhood store with part of proceeds to benefit Lyons children's charities. Notify previous buyers within 100-mile radius; place advertisements in local newspapers; contact Mom's clubs, preschools, medical providers, and other child-related stores and service providers; display posters within 5-mile radius. (Direct and Parallel Marketing)

Manufacturer's Line Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases of soup this month.

6. June: Email list of buyers and Lolly & Criggle's Club members about opening of new website storefront and Grand Opening online "trunk show" event showcasing designs from one small designer who supports stay-at-home mothers. Guest site designer. (Parallel Marketing)

Country Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from Japan this month.

7. July: Press Release to Colorado Parent and Boulder County Kids about Lolly & Criggle's online store being local and giving back to the community by having a portion of its August sales donated to local children's charities. Photo opportunity. (Parallel Marketing)

State Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from California this month.

8. August: Inventory sale with special coupons for regional mothers' clubs, giving the clubs a special discount for use in charitable activity. Portion of proceeds of sale go to local charities (Parallel Marketing)

Manufacturer's Line Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases of Giggle Moon this month.

9. September: Post press information on website with all recent newspaper and magazine articles about Lolly & Criggle's with notification to all child-related online news sites. (Direct Marketing)

Country Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from Australia this month.

10. October: State Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from Texas this month.

11. November: Inventory Sale. Includes large discount for first 10 mothers of multiples (twins, triplets, and so on). Include mention of same offer online. (Direct Marketing)
Manufacturer's Line Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases of Mulberribush this month. (Parallel Marketing)
12. December: Newborn Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from mothers of newborns this month. Request photos of child in Lolly & Criggle's outfit for website.
Country Sale. Offer discounts to first 10 purchases from Canada this month. ●

Appendix

Help Beyond This Book

After reading this book, filling in the worksheets, applying what you've learned to your business, and thinking about the whole matter for a while, you may still have questions. Author Michael Phillips will consult with you for \$180 per half-hour, \$360 per hour. Phone 415-695-1591 and leave a message on the tape with the following information:

- the name and the type of business you own and operate, and
- the exact time you can be called back over the next several days.

Michael will call you collect, listen to your questions, and discuss whether it makes sense to do a consulting session by phone. If the answer is Yes, you'll be asked to pick a time for the phone consultation (about two weeks after the first phone call); and you'll be told the cost of the consultation. In the meantime, you'll need to send Michael:

- a copy of your answers to the worksheets in this book
- your business's most recent financial statement, including a Balance Sheet and Income/Expense Statement, regardless of the condition they're in
- a description of your business, including number of employees, range of inventory, years in business, location or facilities, and a photo of your product, where appropriate
- a brief summary of the questions you are asking, and
- a check for the amount of the consultation.

That's it. Michael Phillips has consulted with over 800 clients in a 30-year career. If he can help, he will. If he can't, he'll say so. If you are not satisfied that the consultation was worth the expense, send Michael a letter within a week of the consultation, explaining why. Half of your consulting fee will be refunded, no questions asked. If you still believe that you haven't received your money's worth, you can ask to have the matter reviewed by independent business consultant Paul Terry of San Francisco (or anyone else you and Michael agree on) for a \$50 fee, half to be paid by you and half by Michael. If, after reviewing two-page letters submitted by you and by Michael, the consultant agrees with you, the rest of your money will be cheerfully refunded. (Incidentally, here's an example of marketing without advertising!)

Marketing Without Advertising Blog

<http://phillips.blogs.com/mwa>

Worksheets

Physical Appearance That Develops Trust.....	345
Evaluating Your Pricing Policy	347
Employee Questionnaire	349
Questionnaire for Suppliers	353
How Open Is Your Business?.....	355
What Your Business Does	357
The Domains in Which Your Business Operates	359
Do People Know What You Do?.....	361
Do You “Tell Them Yourself”?	365
How Customers Can Evaluate Your Business	367
Referrals.....	369
Customer Referrals.....	371
Phone Accessibility Checklist.....	373
Mail Accessibility Checklist.....	373
Walk-In Accessibility Checklist.....	375
Listing Questionnaire.....	377
Customer Recourse Policies and Practices	379
Your Marketing List	381
Designing Direct Marketing Events	383
Designing Parallel Marketing Events	385
Marketing Event Worksheet.....	387

Evaluating Your Pricing Policy

YES NO

- ☐ ☐ Some customers complain about prices.
- ☐ ☐ Some of the trivial but necessary things I offer with my basic product or service (for example, keys, base stands, containers, refills, and so on) are priced at an amount that is more than people expect.
- ☐ ☐ My product or service is offered in enough different measures that by and large my customers can buy what they need.
- ☐ ☐ My product(s) can be bought in more than one unit of measure (bunches, pounds, bags, lugs, liters, cartons, gross, boxes).
- ☐ ☐ My services can be bought in time increments convenient to my customers (days, half-days, hours, minutes, and so on).
- ☐ ☐ My pricing practices are written down on: (flyer, price sheet, website, the wall).
- ☐ ☐ Any exceptions from my standard pricing practices are well explained (for example, senior citizen discounts are stated on a sign with large type).

I estimate that approximately ____% of my customers pay for more of my product or service than they really need or want, because:

I estimate that approximately ____% don't buy all of my product or service that they really need because:

My volume discounts are:

My volume discounts are available to:

Employee Questionnaire

	Poor	Adequate	Excellent
The working conditions here are generally ...	☐	☐	☐
The working conditions, compared to other jobs I've had are ...	☐	☐	☐
Handling of serious employee problems that are brought to managers is ...	☐	☐	☐
When most employees describe the business management they say ...	☐	☐	☐
I know the established policy for handling employee problems and grievances.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE ISN'T ONE	It is ...	☐	☐
I know the established policy for handling employee wage disputes.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE ISN'T ONE	It is ...	☐	☐
I know the established policy for handling conflicts between employees.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE ISN'T ONE	It is ...	☐	☐
When someone is fired most fellow workers know the circumstances in which the employee can appeal the decision within the company.			
☐ YES ☐ NO ☐ THERE AREN'T ANY	The appeal process is ...	☐	☐

Employee Questionnaire (page 2)

Yes No

I am paid fairly.



I know what others are paid.

□ □

Most employees know their jobs.

111

Most employees understand the direction, policies, and goals of the business.

111

Comments and suggestions for improving working conditions:

[illegible]

Questionnaire for Suppliers

I have found in my dealing with _____
NAME OF YOUR BUSINESS

that you and your key employees are generally:

Poor
Adequate
Excellent

Accessible when I need you ...	☐	☐	☐
Reliable in your payments and financial projections ...	☐	☐	☐
Polite in your general business dealings ...	☐	☐	☐
Reliable in doing what you promise on time ...	☐	☐	☐
Able to handle any problems with your product and services satisfactorily ...	☐	☐	☐
Careful and neat when it comes to record keeping ...	☐	☐	☐
Generally trustworthy in all dealings ...	☐	☐	☐

Comments:

How Open Is Your Business?

	Family	Friends	Employees	Accountant	Attorney	Some Customers	All Customers
We are willing to discuss the following aspects of our business with:							
wages ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
rent ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
cost of goods ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
source of supplies ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
financial problems ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
profits and losses ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
specific techniques ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
I personally will show or explain in detail:							
How I do what I do ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How my equipment works ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How I price a product or service ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How I keep track of time ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
How I keep track of costs ...	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
My financial statements are available to anyone who wishes to see them ...					YES ☐	NO ☐	

What Your Business Does

The following is a definition of what your business does, in about 35 words:

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

The Domains in Which Your Business Operates

The major domains in which I operate (taken from my payables) are:

The major domains in which I operate (from looking at checks paid to my consultants) are:

The general functions I fulfill (the major domains in which I operate) from a customer's perspective are:

Do People Know What You Do?

At a party, ____% of the people who hear the name and a very brief description of my business will know a little about the details of what I really do. [For instance, 100% would know what a barber does, but only 3% would know that an oncologist studies tumors.]

At a meeting of businesspeople generally (for example, the Chamber of Commerce), about ____% of the people who hear the name and a very brief description of my business will know a lot about it.

When a potential new customer approaches, how much does he or she really know about what I do?

☐ Doesn't know anything ☐ Knows a little ☐ Knows quite a bit and is very confident

Among new customers, ____% have used someone else in my field (or a similar product) before.

Are there experts in my field (or closely related fields) who have had little or no experience with my goods or services?

☐ YES ☐ NO

List by category:

Are there specific categories of people who would have less than an average level of knowledge about my field who might use my business if they knew more about it, such as people who seldom travel (about the travel business), landlords, commuters, and so on? List:

Do People Know What You Do? (page 2)

Do any of these categories of people include good prospects for my business? List:

[illegible]

I have available the following information about my business:

- ☐ Descriptive brochure
- ☐ Descriptive label
- ☐ References
 - ☐ Articles
 - ☐ Books
 - ☐ Manuals
- ☐ Guidebook for new customers
- ☐ General instructions or manuals
- ☐ Order form for more general information
- ☐ Website

I provide:

- ☐ Personalized instruction
- ☐ Examples of other customers
- ☐ Introductory discussion
- ☐ Classes
- ☐ Samples
- ☐ Free first lesson

Do You “Tell Them Yourself”?

Do you give verbal assurance to customers about the quality of your goods or service?

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

How? What kinds of things do you tell customers?

Is specific evidence given to customers to back up this assessment?

[Examples: “Call me back if you don’t see a result in three days,” “Measure it before and after you put it in a cold wash to make sure it doesn’t shrink.”]

☐ Yes ☐ No

Who usually tells the customer

☐ I tell them ☐ Some employees tell them
☐ Most employees tell them ☐ All employees tell them

Is follow-up done to check new customer satisfaction?

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

Is follow-up done to check regular customer satisfaction?

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

How Customers Can Evaluate Your Business

My business provides clear verbal measurements of product/service effectiveness.

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

My business provides training classes to new customers and prospects.

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

My business provides clear written measurements of product/service effectiveness.

☐ Never ☐ Seldom ☐ Often ☐ Always

We offer a:

- | | |
|--|--|
| ☐ Brochure | ☐ Specification sheet |
| ☐ Checklist | ☐ Contract |
| ☐ Informative label | ☐ Questionnaire |
| ☐ Instructions | ☐ Evaluation form |
| ☐ Worksheet | ☐ Physical measurement |
| ☐ Website | ☐ Other online information
(survey, newsletter, and so on) |

We have:

- ☐ Displays/models
- ☐ Photos of successful work
- ☐ Samples/examples
- ☐ Other evidence of quality

Referrals			
My business is:		by:	
KNOWN	RESPECTED	RECOMMENDED	
			Others in the same business
☐	☐	☐	Some
☐	☐	☐	Most
			Locals in the same business
☐	☐	☐	Some
☐	☐	☐	Most
			Others in closely related businesses
☐	☐	☐	Some
☐	☐	☐	Most
			Leaders in my business
☐	☐	☐	Some
☐	☐	☐	Most
			Students and former employees
☐	☐	☐	Some
☐	☐	☐	Most

Customer Referrals

I offer new customers the names and phone numbers of other customers.

☐ SOMETIMES ☐ USUALLY

I refer customers to others for second opinions or evaluations.

☐ SOMETIMES ☐ USUALLY

I have available:

- ☐ Printed lists of customer referrals
- ☐ Letters from satisfied customers
- ☐ Evidence of awards or certificates for my product
- ☐ Newsletter with customer comments

I display:

- ☐ Articles
- ☐ Photos of customers enjoying my product or service
- ☐ Certificates and awards
- ☐ Any other evidence of accomplishments

Phone Accessibility Checklist

WE OFFER

UPDATED YEARLY

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| ☐ White pages listing in appropriate areas | ☐ |
| ☐ Yellow pages listing under applicable topics and in appropriate geographical areas | ☐ |
| ☐ Answering service/system with clear instructions | ☐ |
| ☐ "800" numbers | ☐ |
| ☐ Numbers listed on cards, receipts, order forms, mailers, vehicles, repair labels, and publications | ☐ |

Mail Accessibility Checklist

WE OFFER

- ☐ Clear, stable address
- ☐ Return address on everything we distribute
- ☐ Mail forwarding up to date
- ☐ Personal relationship with mail delivery person to avoid mistakes
- ☐ Clearly identifiable mailbox, with alternative places to deliver packages and postage-due mail
- ☐ If in out-of-way location, maps are included in mailings

Walk-In Accessibility Checklist

WE OFFER

- ☐ Clear, distinct signs not blocked by trees
- ☐ Neighbors given an invitation to visit so they know where we are and what our business involves
- ☐ Parking available or clearly designated
- ☐ Safe places for bicycles
- ☐ Door that opens easily, bell in working order
- ☐ Convenient hours
- ☐ Convenient parking

Listing Questionnaire

We are listed in:

- ☐ All appropriate professional journals and directories

- ☐ Our alumni organizations' directories

- ☐ Local business organizations' publications

- ☐ Trade associations' directories

- ☐ Appropriate online databases

Customer Recourse Policies and Practices

We have a written customer recourse policy.

☐ YES ☐ NO

Our written policy is:

☐ Given to all customers ☐ Given only upon request ☐ Displayed prominently on the premises

☐ Our policy identifies and deals with those areas and situations where customers are most likely to have problems with our goods or service.

☐ We have regular communication with our customers to be sure they understand our recourse policy and know that we implement it efficiently.

A customer who complains is:

☐ Always right ☐ Almost always right ☐ Seldom right ☐ Rarely or never right

The most common complaints involve: _____

When the customer is right, he or she gets:

☐ Full refund or replacement when: _____

☐ Partial refund when: _____

☐ We send or give questionnaires to customers to evaluate their satisfaction with our service.

Our liability insurance covers the following customer problems:

When a customer deals with our insurance company, it is:

☐ Very responsive ☐ Responsive ☐ Slow to respond ☐ Don't know

When the customer disagrees with our recourse offer, we have available:

☐ Appeal process ☐ Arbitration ☐ Industry-established board of review

☐ Mediation ☐ Nothing

☐ Other _____

Your Marketing List

Your marketing list was last updated:

☐ 6 months ago ☐ 1 year ago ☐ 2 years ago ☐ 3 or more years ago

A complete list of your customers, suppliers, prospects, business associates, relevant acquaintances, and peers is available for an immediate mailing, phone invitation, or email contact. ☐ YES ☐ NO

EXCELLENT
ADEQUATE
NEEDS MORE WORK

If Yes, how current are your addresses?

customers	☐	☐	☐
suppliers	☐	☐	☐
prospects	☐	☐	☐
business associates	☐	☐	☐
acquaintances	☐	☐	☐
peers	☐	☐	☐

How current are your phone numbers?

customers	☐	☐	☐
suppliers	☐	☐	☐
prospects	☐	☐	☐
business associates	☐	☐	☐
acquaintances	☐	☐	☐
peers	☐	☐	☐

How current are your email addresses?

customers	☐	☐	☐
suppliers	☐	☐	☐
prospects	☐	☐	☐
business associates	☐	☐	☐
acquaintances	☐	☐	☐
peers	☐	☐	☐

If No, how long would it take you to make a list?

customers	_____	hours
suppliers	_____	hours
prospects	_____	hours
business associates	_____	hours
acquaintances	_____	hours
peers	_____	hours

Starting now, you are compiling these records from ...

☐ checks
☐ customer records
☐ form letters
☐ supplier records
☐ organization membership lists
☐ your personal address book
☐ email messages
☐ personal organizer
☐ other _____

Designing Direct Marketing Events

SAMPLES: (items or reference guides your customers would find useful)

DEMONSTRATIONS:

CLASSES: (reexamine your business definition in Chapter 7 to broaden the range of topics your customers and prospects are interested in)

FOLLOW-UPS: (what related product or service delivered by mail, phone, email, questionnaire, or visit could make your past and present customers more satisfied with your work?)

Designing Parallel Marketing Events

SAMPLES: (items or reference guides your customers would find useful)

DEMONSTRATIONS:

CLASSES: (reexamine your business definition in Chapter 7 to broaden the range of topics your customers and prospects are interested in)

FOLLOW-UPS: (what related product or service delivered by mail, phone, email, questionnaire, or visit could make your past and present customers more satisfied with your work?)

Marketing Event Worksheet

Event _____

Date _____

Objective _____

STEPS

DEADLINE

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are approximately 20 lines visible. The paper appears to be a standard notebook page or a sheet of stationery.

Index

A

Abbey carpet supplier, 109
Access to your business, 194–197
 checklists, 206
Acquaintances, informing about your
 business, 102–106
Adobe Contribute, 244
Adobe *Dreamweaver*, 244
Advertising
 branding, 23–24
 budgets for, 6–7
 customer loyalty and, 13–14
 dependence on, 14–15
 dishonest ads, 16–20
 honest ads, 21–23
 listings distinguished from, 4
 myths about effectiveness of, 5–13
Advisors, for small business, 225–226
AdWords program, 25–26, 207, 259
Allen/Vanness, 158–159
Amazon.com
 customer service of, 324
 publisher accounting system, 100
American Online, 200
America's Luggage Depot, 156
Anchor Steam Brewery, 7, 319–320

Annenberg Public Policy Center, 19
Answering machine rules, 202
Appearance of business. *See* Physical
 appearance of the business
Arbitrary management, 88–89
Arbitration
 with customer, 106–107
 See also Customer recourse
Archer Daniels Midland, 12
“As is” pricing, 71
Auction pricing on eBay, 76

B

Backing up databases, 284–285
Bazaar Café, 245
Berkeley Design Shop, 140–141
Berkeley Fish, 117
Beta and VHS systems, 123–124
Better Business Bureau, 226
Bill's Farm Basket, 299
Blank worksheets, 343–387
Blogs
 for business, 267–269
 for Marketing Without Advertising,
 342
Board of advisors, 225–226

Book Passage, 321–322
 Book publishers
 personal recommendations and, 36
 solvency issues, 99–100
 Branching system rules, for telephone calls, 204–205
 Branding, 23–24
 British Airways, 51–52
 Burgers' Smokehouse, 166
 Business peers, importance of contact with, 105
 Buying habits, overcoming, 38
 Byerly's, 158

C

C&W Ford, 57
 Caffè Trieste, 301
 Calendar of events, 327–339
 children's boutique clothing, 336–339
 chiropractic clinic, 329–336
 interior design firm, 327–328
 California Raisin Advisory Board, 7–8
 Campus Shoe Repair, 51
 Change orders, importance of, 73
 Children's boutique clothing, calendar of events, 336–339
 Chiropractic clinic, calendar of events, 329–336
 Cingular, 86
 City Lights Bookstore, 56
 Classes, as direct marketing, 305–308
 Cleanliness, 52–53
 Clover Stornetta Farms, 159
 Clutter, physical appearance of business, 55–57

Coffeecup, 244
 Common Ground, 27
 Communicating about quality of your business, 164–188
 customer feedback, 172–173
 direct measures, 171–174
 educational measures, 180–181
 high level of personal communication, 165–169
 public measures, 175–180
 referrals, 181–183
 third-party testimony, 184–188
 Community, creating for your business, 323–324
 Complete prices, 70–74
 CompUSA, 37
 Comsonic, 115
 Conferences, 213–215
 Confidentiality, customer records, 284
 Consulting services, 341–342
 Consumer Action organizations, 226
 Consumer Checkbook, rating system, 177–179
 Consumer Distributing, 50
 Consumer Reports, 8–9
 Convenience of access, to your business, 194–197
 Converse Shoes, 300
 Coors, 11–12, 85
 Costco, 7
 Counseling Center, 195
 Craigslist, 8
 Credit card billing, for telephone sales, 203
 Creditworthiness, suppliers and, 97–100

Cross Corporation, 228
 Currency exchange rates, 263–264
 Customer feedback, 172–173
 Customer recourse, 218–233
 arbitration and mediation, 106–107
 designing a policy, 224–228
 elements of a good policy, 221–224
 employee involvement, 226–227
 importance of, 218–221
 informing customers about, 228–229, 231
 public involvement, 227
 questionnaire about policy, 230
 written policy, 231–233
 Customers
 attracting to your website, 273
 categories of potential customers, 153
 education of, 152–160
 lack of loyalty, 13–14
 Customer screening, and websites, 254–257

D

Delivery of product and services, 195–197
 Demonstrations. *See* Product demonstrations
 Description of your business, 128–135
 broad view of, 129–130, 132–133
 in established fields, 139–142
 in new or obscure fields, 143–152
 questionnaire for, 161–162
 succinct description, 134–135
 video and, 148

Direct-mail catalogues, fantasy and, 60–61
 Direct marketing, 297–310
 classes, 305–308
 follow-up, 308–310
 giving extra to customers, 301–304
 product demonstrations, 304–305
 sample distribution, 298–301
 Discount coupons, 304
 Dishonest ads, 16–20
 Disneyland, 60
 Display windows, 51
 Dispute resolution. *See* Customer recourse
 Domain names
 distributing your URL, 261
 meta tags for business domains, 136
 Domains of operation
 broad domain, 129–130, 132–133
 defining, 136–138
 DrKoop.com, 42–43
 Due Maternity, 65
 Dutch Philips, 124
 Dynamic interactive marketing
 planning your website, 272–274
 pricing strategies, 276–279
 See also Websites

E

eBay
 auction pricing, 76
 feedback profiles, 34–35
 sellers' recourse policies, 223
 as supplemental outlet for sales, 280

Education of customers, 152–160
 communicating about your business,
 180–181
 dynamic Internet and, 280–283

E.F. Hutton, 12

“800/888” numbers, 203

Elite Cafe, 34

Email, giving advice by, 121

Employees

 common complaints, 88–91
 and customer service, 226–227
 grievance procedures, 92–93, 94
 handling complaints, 91–93
 questionnaires for, 93, 95–96
 treatment of and your reputation,
 84–87

Established fields of business,
 communicating about your business in,
 139–142

EToys, 8

Eurotherm, 116

Events. *See* Calendar of events

Exit Reality, 254

Exploitation, employees and, 90–91

F

False buzz, 28

Fantasy, integration in physical
 appearance, 60–64

Fax machines, 203

Filene's, 73–74

Financial openness, 113–116

Finding your business, 190–215

accessibility checklists, 206

convenience of access, 194–197

landmarks and online maps, 191–194

online strategies, 257–262

signs, 198

telephone accessibility, 198–205

trade shows and conferences, 213–215

Fine Design, 54

Fit Lab, 196

Flash programming, 286, 288

Fluegelman, Andrew, 125

Follow-up

 as direct marketing, 308–310

 as parallel marketing, 315–316

Franz Valley Gardens, 195

French Laundry, 34

Friends, informing about your business,
 102–106

G

Gethuman.com, 203

Gifts for customers, 277

Gomen-Tei, 303

Good Vibrations, 146–147

Google, 9, 11

 AdWords program, 25–26, 207, 259

 Alerts service, 245

 Groups, 260

 lack of clutter and, 56–57

Greens Restaurant, 64, 208

Grievance procedures, for employee
 complaint handling, 92–93, 94

H

“Hacker Safe Tested Daily” emblem, 284
Hafner Vineyard, 131
Halpern, Steve, 144–145
Hammacher Schlemmer, 284
Hansen’s Mill, 196
Hohenstein, Nan, 157
Home delivery of product and services, 195–197
Home page design, 251–252
Honest ads, 21–23
Hours of operation, 193–194
House Cleaners, 172
House of Tyrol, 166–167

I

Ideas, openness with, 123–126
IKEA, 76
Industry Standard, Secret Shopper column, 176
Information & Referral Service, 27
Information services
 Internet pricing for, 77–78
 openness with, 120–121
ING Direct USA, 236
Intellectual property, openness with, 123–126
Interactivity of websites, 254–257
Interior design firm, calendar of events, 327–328
International marketing, Internet and, 263–266
Internet
 advertising and, 8

blogs for business, 267–269
business use of, 237–239
geographic reach of, 240–242
international marketing, 263–266
marketing on, 236–269
pricing for information, 77–78
See also Domain names; Websites
iTunes for podcasts, 286

J

JacquieLawson.com, 285
Japan, honest advertising history, 21
Java programming, 286
Job applicants, treatment of, 89
Joseph’s Sewer Rooter, 139
Judgment, personal recommendations and, 40–41

K

Kaiser Permanente, 233
Keywords
 meta tags for business domains, 136
 for search engines, 257–258
Koop, C. Everett, 42–43

L

La Blue’s Cleaners, 105–106
Landmarks for finding your business, 191–194
Lands’ End, 231
Lauder, Estee, 300
Laughing Squid, 245
Letter of agreement, 174
Links to other websites, 246–247

Linux, 124

Listings

advertising distinguished from, 4

benefits of, 24–29

creative form for, 207–210

Google and, 11

questionnaire, 212

Listservers, 260

L.L. Bean Co., 229, 231

Localization and translation, for

international business, 264–265

Lolly & Criggles, calendar of events,
336–339

Lonely Planet Books, 323

M

Made to Order, 158, 187

Mad Matter, 197

Mail accessibility checklist, 206

Ma Maison, 34

Management

arbitrary, 88–89

openness in, 119

Maps for finding your business,

191–194, 247–248

Marginal pricing, 278–279

Marketing list, 291–293

Marketing plan

calendar of events, 327–339

direct marketing, 297–310

parallel marketing, 310–316

peer-based marketing, 317–324

personal recommendations and, 39–42

the “what” of your plan, 294–297

when to implement, 326

wholesalers using middlepersons,
295–297

the “who” of your plan, 290–291

Martha Stewart brand, 12

Mary’s Flowers, 168

Masa’s, 303

Maytag, Fritz, 319–320

McDonald’s, 53

Mediation

with customer, 106–107

for employee complaint handling, 92

Meta tags for business domains, 136

Microsoft Expression, 244

Microsoft Media files (.wmv), 288

Midas Mufflers, 53

Miller Brewing, 87

Moon Travel Handbooks, 311

Movies, personal recommendations and,
36

Moving the business, informing

customers, 209

Multiple Choice Consultation, 121

N

Natural Bedroom, 179

Netscape, 124, 125

New Balance, 164–166

Newsgroups, 260

Next Century, 246–247

No Brand, 115–116

Nonprofits, Information & Referral
Service, 27

Nordstrom, 50–51

O

- Office waiting areas, appearance of, 50
- Online auctions, 76
 - See also* eBay
- Online comments
 - eBay feedback, 34–35
 - importance of, 37
- Openness, 112–126
 - evaluating, 122
 - financial openness, 113–116
 - with ideas, 123–126
 - with information, 120–121
 - in management, 119
 - physical openness, 117
 - wages and, 87
- O'Reilly Media, 177
- Osmosis, 64–65, 155–156, 303

P

- Pacific Basin School of Textile Arts, 198
- Padway and Padway, 147
- Palmer, Mary, 15
- Pango Pango, 62
- Paradiso: Jewels of Bali, 215
- Paralegals and bar association, 107–108
- Parallel marketing, 310–316
 - follow-up, 315–316
 - product demonstrations, 313–315
 - samples and offers, 311–313
- Parking issues, 194–195
- PC Talk, 125
- Peck, Laura, 13–14
- Peer-based marketing, 317–324
- Peet's Coffee, 53–54

- Personalized pricing, 276–277
- Personal recommendations, 32–45
 - attracting new customers with, 38
 - cost-effectiveness of, 33–37
 - disadvantages of, 42–44
 - marketing plan based on, 39–42
 - online strategies, 260–261
 - websites and, 273
 - See also* Referrals; “Word of mouth”
- Phillips, Michael, consulting services of, 341–342
- Phone accessibility. *See* Telephone accessibility
- Physical appearance of the business, 48–65
 - cleanliness, 52–53
 - clutter, 55–57
 - customer expectations, 49
 - evaluating, 58–59
 - fantasy integration, 60–64
 - goals for, 48–49
 - industry norms for, 49–52
 - openness of, 117
 - smell, 53–55
 - sound, 57–58
 - time for changes, 64–65
- Pickle Family Circus, 181
- Pike Place Market, 227
- Podcast Alley, 286
- Podcasting, 286
- Potential customers
 - categories of, 153
 - describing your business to, 128–135
 - domains of operation, 136–138

Pottery marketing, 145

Pricing policies, 68–79

- completeness, 70–74
- customer choices about, 74–77
- dynamic marketing and, 276–279
- easy-to-understand prices, 68–70
- evaluation checklist, 79
- Internet pricing for information, 77–78

Product demonstrations

- as direct marketing, 304–305
- as parallel marketing, 313–315

Professional association directories, 209

Promptness in resolving customer problems, 224

Public behavior, 108–109

Public measures, communicating about your business, 175–180

Punch cards for purchases, 302

Q

Questionnaire

- customer evaluation of your business, 178
- customer recourse policies, 230
- description of your business, 161–162
- for employees, 93, 95–96
- listings, 212
- openness of your business, 122
- referrals, 183, 188
- for suppliers, 101
- telling people about your business, 169

Quick-Stop, 55

QuickTime files (.mov), 288

Quinnipiac, 307

R

“Rain check,” 185

Raisin campaign, 7–9

Recommendations. *See* Personal recommendations

Recourse. *See* Customer recourse

Recreational Equipment Inc., 229

Redwood Funeral Society, 167

Redwood Hill Farm, 144

Referrals

- paying for Internet links, 261–262
- from people in related fields, 210–211
- questionnaires to monitor, 183, 188
- from websites, 259

See also Personal recommendations

Reliability of websites, 285

Reputation tracking, 82–84

Responsibility, personal

- recommendations and, 41–42

Restaurant Gary Danko, 281–282

Return policy. *See* Customer recourse

Ritz Cafe, 34

RSS feeds, 245

S

Sample distribution

- as direct marketing, 298–301
- as parallel marketing, 311–313

Sam’s Club, 7

Sandstrom Products, 115

Santa Rosa Dodge, 192

Sassafras Restaurant, 75, 323

ScanAlert, 283

Scandinavian Airlines, 119

Scents Air, 54
 Search engine optimization (SEO), 258
 Search engines, 257–258
 Sears Roebuck & Co., 228
 Sea Trek, 314
 Security issues, websites and, 282–288
 See's Candy, 301
 SEO strategies, 258
 Service businesses
 change orders, 73
 written agreements for, 173–174
 Servicemagic, 250
 7-11 stores, 55
 Signs for your business, 198
 Smell, appearance of business and,
 53–55
 Sonic.net, 72
 Sonoma Compost, 75
 Sonoma Land Trust, 176–177
 Sound, physical appearance of business,
 57–58
 Sound Vision, 37
 SSL connections, 283
 Summit Roofing, 56
 Supercuts, 53
 Suppliers
 questionnaire for, 101
 treatment of, 97–100
 Sweden, honest advertising history, 21

T

Tackle Shack, 300–301
 Tarrytown Conference Center, 138
 Technorati.com, 268

Telephone accessibility, 198–205
 answering machine rules, 202
 branching system rules, 204–205
 checklist for, 205
 technology for, 201–205
 voicemail rules, 202
 Yellow Pages listings, 25, 26, 199–201
 Terry, Paul, 342
 Terry McHugh store, 63
 Third-party testimony, communicating
 about your business, 184–188
 360 feedback program, 172, 207–208
 Three-way calling, 203
 Tilley Endurables, 197
 Tinseltown Studios, 60
 TiVo, 25
 Tofu marketing, 143–144
 Tokyo Hands, 304
 Top of the World Community, 147–148
 Toys “R” Us, 8
 Trade association directories, 209
 Trade shows, 213–215
 Translation and localization, for
 international business, 264–265
 Triton (hotel), 61
 Trust
 openness as basis of, 112–126
 personal recommendations and, 40

U

Umay, 185
 Unequal treatment, of employees, 88
 United States Postal Service, 91–92
 Urasenke Tea School, 55

V

Verisign, 283
 VHS and Beta systems, 123–124
 Victorian Trading Company, 61
 Victoria's Secret, 60
 Videos
 appropriate use of, 148
 clips on a website, 286–288
 marketing with, 147–152
 technical issues, 150–152
 Voicemail rules, 202

W

Walk-in accessibility checklist, 206
 Walmart, 7
 Websites
 address for (URL), 261
 architecture of, 272
 attracting customers to, 273
 calendar of events on, 244–245
 customer comments, 282
 customer screening, 254–257
 described, 239
 designing, 249–253, 274–275
 free information provided on, 248–249
 home page design, 251–252
 interactivity, 254–257
 links to other sites, 245–247
 as listing, 29
 meta tags for business domains, 136
 online directions, 193, 247–248
 paying for referrals, 261–262

 reliability of, 285
 security issues, 282–288
 software for updating, 244
 structure of, 252–253
 tips for design, 274
 translation and localization of, 264–265
 updating, 65
 what to include, 243–249
 See also Domain names; Internet
 Wedding photography, 15
 Whistle blowing, 93
 Wholesalers using middlepersons, marketing for, 295–297
 Wild About Mushrooms, 145
 Woodridge, Gail, 15
 “Word of mouth,” 32
 building a business through, 104
 negative word of mouth, 106–108
 See also Personal recommendations
 Worksheets, 343–387
 WorldCom, 279
 Worldwide telex services, 203

Y

Yellow Pages, 25, 26, 199–201
 York Creek Vineyards, 319
 YouTube for video clips, 287

Z

Zoah's, 187–188 ●

About the Authors

By the Publisher, Ralph Warner

MICHAEL PHILLIPS I met Michael Phillips in 1979, when he was coordinating the Briarpatch, a network of small businesses that share common values of openness and honesty, and provide help for each other. *Nolo* had just gone through a growth spurt, which had strained our personal relationships. Michael helped us set up a series of meetings that got things back in sync. Over the next few years, Michael became a good friend and trusted advisor, and I frequently drew on his extensive business experience, which included a major role in developing the Mastercharge (now MasterCard) interbank credit card and doing consulting for over 600 businesses.

After a few years our relationship led to my teaching at the Noren Institute, a pioneering small business school run by Michael and several others in San Francisco. I also became more familiar with Michael's innovative thinking about small business success by reading both of his books, *Honest Business* and *The Seven Laws of Money*, which I routinely recommend to everyone who runs, or is thinking of starting, a business.

One of the courses I helped teach at Noren Institute was Marketing Without Advertising, a concept that I learned the hard way here at *Nolo*. The result of helping Michael teach this course was a series of freewheeling conversations, ranging from Michael's small business teaching and consulting experiences in Tokyo, Stockholm, and Paris, to my own more mundane experiments with various ways of communicating the *Nolo* message to large numbers of people without the expense of advertising. The results were a real sense of excitement that the concept of marketing without advertising was one of genuine interest to the small business community, and the decision to produce this book. I know now it was an excellent decision because we have experimented with a number of Michael's marketing-without-advertising concepts here at *Nolo*. Without exception, they have been extremely successful.

When Michael Phillips showed us the first draft of this book, it was long on brilliant concepts but a little short on specifics and organization. What to do? Although it might have made sense to publish Michael's manuscript under a title such as *The Zen of Small Business Marketing*, we had already announced that we were publishing a *Nolo*-style workbook that not only provided the intellectual foundation for why marketing without advertising works but also a lot of detailed "how-to" specifics.

SALLI RASBERRY Enter Salli Rasberry, who has successfully run a dozen small businesses in fields as varied as book fairs (the first San Francisco International), publishing companies (New Glide Publications and Clear Glass Press), documentary films, business consulting, and writing (coauthor with Michael Phillips of *The Seven Laws of Money* and *Honest Business*, among others). Currently she is vice president of the Sonoma Land Trust, a private nonprofit that preserves and protects the land forever through conservation easements or outright ownership. A pioneer in the fields of education and values-based living, Rasberry is involved in the design and development of an innovative model for a rural home-care center for the elderly in northern California. An artist and avid gardener, she initiated the Coffin Garden Project, where artists, gardeners, and others are invited to express their feelings about death in a setting of natural beauty and serenity.

Salli's job was to add a few pounds of order and a bushel of passion to Michael's manuscript. She did this brilliantly, at the same time that her honesty, compassion, and general niceness made the always-difficult task of turning a good manuscript into an excellent book a real pleasure.

Other Books by Phillips and Rasberry

The Seven Laws of Money

(Pocket Classics, Shambhala Publications)

Honest Business

(Pocket Classics, Shambhala Publications)

The Briarpatch Book (ed.) (New Glide)

By Phillips

Simple Living Investments (Clear Glass)

Citizen Legislature, with Ernest Callenbach
(Banyan Tree/Clear Glass)

By Rasberry

Living Your Life Out Loud: How to Unlock Your Creativity and Unleash Your Joy, with Padi Selwyn
(Pocket Books)

The Art of Dying: Honoring & Celebrating Life's Passages, with Carole Rae Wontanabe
(Celestial Arts)